

# Hypermedia Systems

## *Practical Applications of Hypermedia*

Adam Stepinski, Carson Gross, Deniz Akşimşek



Hypermedia Concepts .....	8
Introduction .....	9
What is a Hypermedia System? .....	9
Hypermedia-Driven Applications .....	9
Goals .....	10
Book Layout .....	10
Hypermedia: A New Generation .....	11
1. Hypermedia: A Reintroduction .....	12
1.1. What Is Hypermedia? .....	12
1.2. A Brief History of Hypermedia .....	13
Modern Implementation .....	14
1.3. The World's Most Successful Hypertext: HTML .....	15
The Essence of HTML .....	15
So What <i>Isn't</i> Hypermedia? .....	17
1.4. Why Use Hypermedia? .....	20
JavaScript Fatigue .....	20
1.5. A Hypermedia Resurgence? .....	21
Hypermedia-Oriented Javascript Libraries .....	22
Hypermedia Driven Applications .....	23
1.6. When Should You Use Hypermedia? .....	24
1.7. When Shouldn't You Use Hypermedia? .....	24
1.8. Hypermedia: A Sophisticated, Modern System Architecture .....	26
2. Components Of A Hypermedia System .....	27
2.1. Hypermedia .....	27
2.2. Hypermedia Protocols .....	28
HTTP Methods .....	30
2.3. Hypermedia Servers .....	32
Hypermedia On Whatever you'd Like (HOWL) .....	32
2.4. Hypermedia Clients .....	33
2.5. REST .....	33
The "Constraints" of REST .....	34
The Client-Server Constraint .....	34
The Statelessness Constraint .....	35
The Caching Constraint .....	35
The Uniform Interface Constraint .....	35
Layered System .....	41
An Optional Constraint: Code-On-Demand .....	41
2.6. Conclusion .....	42
3. Effective HTML .....	43
Why relearn HTML? .....	43
3.1. A note on the S-word .....	43

3.2. Writing quality HTML .....	44
3.3. Extending HTML .....	44
Data attributes .....	44
Microformats .....	44
Custom elements? .....	44
4. Building A Simple Web 1.0 Application With Flask .....	45
4.1. Picking A "Web Stack" To Use .....	45
4.2. Python .....	46
4.3. Introducing Flask: Our First Route .....	47
4.4. Contact.App Functionality .....	48
Showing A Searchable List Of Contacts .....	49
Adding A New Contact .....	52
Viewing The Details Of A Contact .....	56
Viewing The Details Of A Contact .....	57
Editing And Deleting A Contact .....	57
Deleting A Contact .....	61
Contact.App... Implemented! .....	61
4.5. Summary .....	62
Hypermedia-Driven Web Applications With htmx .....	63
5. Extending HTML As Hypermedia .....	64
A Close Look At A Hyperlink .....	65
5.2. Extending HTML as a Hypermedia with htmx .....	67
Installing and Using htmx .....	68
5.3. Triggering HTTP Requests .....	68
It's All Just HTML! .....	69
5.4. Targeting Other Elements .....	70
5.5. Swap Styles .....	72
5.6. Using Other Events .....	73
5.7. Passing Request Parameters .....	77
Enclosing Forms .....	77
Including inputs .....	78
Inline Values .....	78
5.8. History Support .....	79
5.9. Summary .....	81
6. htmx In Action .....	83
6.1. Installing htmx .....	83
6.2. AJAX-ifying Our Application .....	84
Boosted Links .....	84
Boosted Forms .....	85
Attribute Inheritance .....	86
Progressive Enhancement .....	87

Adding <code>hx-boost</code> to Contact.app .....	87
6.3. A Next Step: Deleting Contacts .....	88
Updating The Server Side .....	89
Targeting The Right Element .....	90
Updating The Location Bar URL Properly .....	91
One Last Thing .....	92
Progressive Enhancement? .....	92
6.4. Next Steps: Validating Contact Emails .....	93
Updating Our Input Type .....	94
Inline Validation .....	95
Validating Emails Server Side .....	96
Taking Our User Experience Further .....	97
Debouncing Our Validation Requests .....	98
Ignoring Non-Mutating Keys .....	98
6.5. Another Improvement: Paging .....	99
Click To Load .....	101
Infinite Scroll .....	102
6.6. Summary .....	103
7. More htmx Patterns .....	104
Active Search .....	104
Our Current Search UI .....	104
Adding Active Search .....	105
Targeting The Correct Element .....	106
Paring Down Our Content .....	107
HTTP Request Headers In htmx .....	107
Factoring Your Templates .....	110
Using Our New Template .....	111
Updating The Navigation Bar With <code>hx-push-url</code> .....	112
Adding A Request Indicator .....	113
7.1. Lazy Loading .....	115
Pulling The Expensive Code Out .....	116
Adding An Indicator .....	118
But That's Not Lazy! .....	119
7.2. Inline Delete .....	119
Getting Fancy .....	121
Updating The Server Side .....	122
Getting <i>Super</i> Fancy With The htmx Swapping Model .....	123
Taking Advantage of <code>htmx-swapping</code> .....	124
7.3. Bulk Delete .....	125
The "Delete Selected Contacts" button .....	126
The Server Side for Delete Selected Contacts .....	127

7.4. Summary .....	128
8. A Dynamic Archive UI .....	130
A Dynamic Archive UI .....	130
UI Requirements .....	131
Beginning Our Implementation .....	132
Adding the POST End Point .....	133
Conditionally Rendering A Progress UI .....	134
8.1. Polling .....	135
Using Polling To Update The Archive UI .....	136
Downloading The Result .....	139
Downloading The Completed Archive .....	140
8.2. Smoothing Things Out: Animations in htmx .....	141
The "Settling" Step in htmx .....	141
8.3. Dismissing The Download UI .....	142
8.4. An Alternative UX: Auto-Download .....	143
8.5. Summary .....	143
9. Deep htmx .....	145
Getting Deeper Into htmx .....	145
9.1. htmx Attributes .....	145
<code>hx-swap</code> .....	146
<code>hx-trigger</code> .....	147
Other Attributes .....	149
9.2. Events .....	151
htmx-generated Events .....	151
Using The <code>htmx:configRequest</code> Event .....	152
Canceling a Request using <code>htmx:abort</code> .....	152
Server Generated Events .....	153
9.3. HTTP Requests & Responses .....	155
HTTP Response Codes .....	155
9.4. Updating Other Content .....	156
Expanding Your Selection .....	156
Out of Band Swaps .....	156
Events .....	157
Being Pragmatic .....	158
9.5. Debugging .....	158
Logging htmx Events .....	158
Monitoring Events in Chrome .....	160
9.6. Security Considerations .....	160
Content Security Policies & htmx .....	161
9.7. Configuring .....	161
9.8. Summary .....	161

10. Client Side Scripting .....	163
Scripting in Hypermedia-Driven Applications.....	163
10.1. Scripting tools for the Web .....	164
10.2. Vanilla JavaScript.....	165
10.3. A Simple Counter .....	166
An Inline Implementation .....	166
Separating Our Scripting Out.....	167
Locality .....	169
What To Do With Our Counter? .....	170
Vanilla JS in action: an overflow menu .....	172
10.4. Alpine.js .....	178
x-on:click vs. onclick .....	179
Reactivity and Templating .....	180
Alpine.js in Action: A Bulk Action Toolbar .....	180
10.5. _hyperscript .....	182
_hyperscript in action: a keyboard shortcut .....	184
Why a new programming language?.....	186
10.6. Using Off-the-shelf Components.....	187
Integration Options .....	187
10.7. Pragmatic Scripting.....	190
10.8. Summary .....	190
11. JSON Data APIs & Hypermedia Driven Applications .....	192
JSON Data APIs.....	192
11.1. Hypermedia APIs & JSON Data APIs .....	192
Differences Between Hypermedia APIs & Data APIs .....	193
11.2. Adding a JSON Data API To Contact.app.....	195
Picking a Root URL For Our API .....	196
Our First JSON Endpoint: Listing All Contacts.....	196
Adding Contacts.....	198
Viewing Contact Details.....	199
Updating & Deleting Contacts .....	199
Additional Data API Considerations.....	200
The "Shape" of Our Two APIs.....	202
The Model View Controller (MVC) Paradigm .....	202
11.3. Summary .....	203
Bringing Hypermedia To Mobile .....	204
12. Hyperview: A Mobile Hypermedia .....	205
12.1. The state of mobile app development.....	205
12.2. Hypermedia for Mobile Apps .....	206
Web views.....	206
Hyperview .....	207

Which Hypermedia architecture should I use? .....	209
12.3. Introduction to HXML .....	210
Hello World! .....	210
UI Elements .....	211
Inputs .....	214
Styling .....	216
Custom elements .....	217
Behaviors .....	218
12.4. Summary .....	232
13. Building a Contacts App With Hyperview .....	234
13.1. Creating a mobile app .....	234
13.2. A Searchable List of Contacts .....	236
Searching Contacts .....	240
Infinite scroll .....	242
Pull-to-refresh .....	243
Viewing The Details Of A Contact .....	244
13.3. Editing a Contact .....	247
Updating the Contacts List .....	252
13.4. Deleting a Contact .....	255
13.5. Adding a New Contact .....	257
13.6. Deploying the App .....	258
13.7. One Backend, Multiple Hypermedia formats .....	259
What is Content Negotiation? .....	260
Approach 1: Template Switching .....	260
Approach 2: The Redirect Fork .....	262
13.8. Summary .....	263
14. Extending the Hyperview Client .....	264
14.1. Adding Phone Calls and Email .....	264
14.2. Adding Toast Messages .....	269
14.3. Swipe gesture on Contacts .....	272
Designing The Component .....	273
Implementing The Component .....	274
14.4. Conclusion .....	281
Conclusion .....	282
15. Conclusion .....	283
Hypermedia Reconsidered .....	283
15.1. Pausing, And Reflecting .....	283



# Hypermedia Concepts

# Introduction

This is a book about building hypermedia systems. This might seem like a strange topic: hypermedia *systems*? Isn't hypermedia just a way to link documents together? The canonical example being, of course, HTML on the World Wide Web? What do you mean hypermedia *systems*?

Well, yes, HTML is *a* hypermedia, that's true. But there is *also* HTTP, the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol, and all the details associated with it: caching, various headers, response codes, and so forth. And then there is the *server*, which is absolutely crucial in a hypermedia system: it is, after all, serving the hypermedia representations of various resources to the browser.

So there is more to hypermedia than just the *hypermedia* being used. Today, for example, it is very popular to use HTML to *bootstrap* a Single Page Application (SPA), an application that is written primarily in JavaScript and that communicates with a server via JSON API calls. HTML, in these applications, becomes a (somewhat awkward) graphical interface language that must be used because, well, because that's what's there, in the browser. These applications are typically not hypermedia systems, but are, instead, more akin to the old client-server applications popular in the 1980s and 1990s.

So it makes sense to talk about *hypermedia systems* and not just a *hypermedia*: the network, server and, indeed, effective use of the hypermedia *client* (e.g. the browser) are all crucial aspects of building an effective piece of software that uses hypermedia, and it is the entire *hypermedia system* that comes together to make hypermedia so powerful.

## What is a Hypermedia System?

To understand what a hypermedia system is, we need to dig into the history of the canonical hypermedia system, the World Wide Web. Roy Fielding, an engineer who help create specifications and build implementations of early web software, gave us the term REpresentational State Transfer, or REST, in his dissertation on the World Wide Web. In his dissertation, he described REST as a *network architecture* and contrasted it with earlier approaches to building distributed software.

We define a *hypermedia system* as one that adheres to the REST network architecture, in Fielding's original sense of that term. Unfortunately, today, if you are familiar with the term REST, you probably associate it with JSON APIs. This, despite the fact that Fielding *explicitly states* that a RESTful system *must* be based on hypermedia. Fielding was, after all, describing The World Wide Web, which was just HTML at the time, when he wrote is dissertation! JSON APIs were years away from becoming common.

JSON API developer may have co-opted the term REST (a long story, for later in this book) but the fact of the matter is that, if you have ever built a website using nothing but HTML and a web server, you have built a REST-ful, *hypermedia system*.

## Hypermedia-Driven Applications

In this book we are going to take a look at hypermedia as a *system architecture*, and then explore some practical, *modern* approaches to building applications using it. We will call applications built

using this architecture *Hypermedia-Driven Applications*, or HDAs, and contrast them with a popular model in use today, the Single Page Application.

A Hypermedia-Driven Application is simply one built on top of (and respecting the architecture of) a *hypermedia system*.

## Goals

The goal of this book is to give you a strong sense of how the REST-ful, hypermedia system architecture *differs* from other client-server systems, and what the strengths (and weaknesses) of the hypermedia approach are. Further, we hope to convince you that the hypermedia architecture is *relevant* to developers building modern applications.

We aim to give you the tools to evaluate a given applications requirements and answer the question: "Could I build this as a Hypermedia-Driven Application?"

And we hope that, for many applications, the answer to that question will be "Yes!"

## Book Layout

The book is broken into three parts:

- An introduction (or re-introduction) to hypermedia, with an in-depth look at HTML and HTTP. We will finish up this review of core hypermedia concepts by creating a simple Web 1.0-style application, Contact.app, for managing contacts.
- Next we will look at how we can use [htmx](#), a hypermedia-oriented JavaScript library, to improve Contact.app. By using htmx, we will be able to achieve a level of interactivity in our application that many developers would expect requires a large, sophisticated front end library, such as React. Thanks to htmx, we will be able to do this *without* abandoning hypermedia as a system architecture!
- Finally, we will look at a completely different hypermedia system, HyperView. HyperView is a *mobile* hypermedia, related to, but distinct from, HTML. It supports *mobile specific* features by providing not only a hypermedia, but also a hypermedia client, a network protocol and so on. It provides a full *mobile hypermedia system* for you to build your mobile application with, and, in doing so, makes it possible to build mobile Hypermedia-Driven Applications.

Note that each section is *somewhat* independent of one another. If you already know hypermedia in-depth and how basic Web 1.0 applications function, you may want to skip ahead to the second section on htmx and how to build modern web applications using hypermedia. Similarly, if you are well versed in hypermedia and want to dive into a novel *mobile* hypermedia, you can skip ahead to the HyperView section.

That being said, the book is designed to be read in order and both the htmx and HyperView sections build on the Web 1.0 application described at the end of the first section. Furthermore, even if you *are* well versed in all the concepts of hypermedia and details of HTML & HTTP, it is probably worth it to at least skim through the first few chapters for a refresher.

# Hypermedia: A New Generation

Tragically, hypermedia isn't seriously discussed very often these days. Even many web-veterans who grew up with the web in the late 1990s and early 2000s haven't seriously thought about these ideas in over a decade. To say nothing of young web developers who have grown up knowing nothing but React-talking-to-Node-via-JSON.

So, even if you know hypermedia well, it is worth it to read the first part of this book to *redevelop* your knowledge of hypermedia. Hypermedia was a great idea! It still is!

By the end of this book, you will have the tools and the *language* to put this great idea to work in your own applications. And, if you'll join us, we would love your help in bringing the ideas and concepts of hypermedia systems to the broader development community.

Hypermedia can compete, hypermedia *can win*, hypermedia *has won* as an architectural choice against the SPA/JSON juggernaut, but *only* if smart people (like you :) learn about it, build with it and then tell the world about it.

Let's go.

Remember the message? “The future is not set. There is no fate but what we make for ourselves.”

— Kyle Reese, Terminator 2: Judgement Day

# Chapter 1. Hypermedia: A Reintroduction

Hypermedia is a universal technology today, nearly as common as electricity. Billions of people use a hypermedia-based systems every day, mainly by interacting with the *HyperText Markup Language (HTML)* being exchanged via the *HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP)* by using a Web Browser connected to the World Wide Web. People use these systems to get their news, check in on friends, buy things online, play games, send emails and so forth: the variety and sheer number of online services being delivered by hypermedia is truly astonishing.

And yet, despite this ubiquity, the topic hypermedia itself is a strangely under-explored concept today, left mainly to specialists. Yes, you can find a lot of tutorials on how to author HTML, create links and forms, etc. But it is rare to see a discussion of HTML *as a hypermedia* and, more broadly, on how an entire hypermedia *system* fits together.

This is in marked contrast with the early web development era, when concepts like *Representational State Transfer (REST)* and *Hypermedia As The Engine of Application State (HATEOAS)* were discussed frequently, refined and debated among web developers.

In a sad turn of events, today, the world's most popular hypermedia, HTML, is often viewed almost resentfully: it's an awkward, legacy markup language that must be used build graphical application user interfaces in what are increasingly entirely Javascript-based applications. HTML just happens to be there, in the browser, so we have to use it.

This as a shame, and we hope that with this book we can convince you that the hypermedia architecture is *not* simply a piece of legacy technology that we have to accept and deal with. Instead, we aim to show you that hypermedia is a tremendously innovative, simple and *flexible* way to build robust distributed systems: *hypermedia systems*.

We hope that by the end of this book you will feel, as we do, that the hypermedia approach deserves a seat at the table when you, a web developer, are considering the architecture of your next application. Creating a *Hypermedia-Driven Application* on top of a more general *hypermedia system* is a plausible and, indeed, often excellent choice for *modern* web applications.

And, as the section on HyperView will show, not just web applications!

## 1.1. What Is Hypermedia?

Hypertexts: new forms of writing, appearing on computer screens, that will branch or perform at the reader's command. A hypertext is a non-sequential piece of writing; only the computer display makes it practical.

— Ted Nelson, <https://archive.org/details/SelectedPapers1977/page/n7/mode/2up>

Let us begin at the beginning: what is hypermedia?

Hypermedia is a media, for example a text, that includes *non-linear branching* from one location in the media to another, via, for example, hyperlinks embedded that the media. The prefix "hyper-" derives from the Greek prefix "ὑπερ-" which means "beyond" or "over", indicating that hypermedia

goes beyond normal, passively consumed media like magazines and newspapers.

Hyperlinks are a canonical example of a *hypermedia control*:

### Hypermedia Control

A *hypermedia control* is an element in a hypermedia that describes (or controls) some sort of interaction, often with a remote server, by encoding information about that interaction directly and completely within itself.

It is these hypermedia controls that differential hypermedia from other sorts of media.

You may be more familiar with the term *hypertext*, from whose Wikipedia page the above quote is taken. Hypertext is a sub-category of hypermedia and much of this book is going to discuss how to build modern applications using hypertexts such as HTML, the HyperText Markup Language, or HXML, a hypertext used by the HyperView mobile hypermedia system.

Hypertexts like HTML function along-side other technologies crucial for making an entire system work: network protocols like HTTP, other media types such as images, videos, hypermedia servers (i.e. servers providing hypermedia APIs), sophisticated hypermedia clients (e.g. web browsers), and so on.

Because of this, we prefer the broader term *hypermedia systems* when discussing the properties of applications built using hypertext, to emphasize the system architecture over the particular hypermedia being used. It is this system architecture that we feel is underappreciated in the industry.

## 1.2. A Brief History of Hypermedia

From where did the idea of hypermedia come?

While there were many precursors to the modern idea of hypertext and the more general hypermedia, many people point to the article "*As We May Think*" written by Vannevar Bush in The Atlantic as a starting point for looking at what has become modern hypermedia.

In this article Bush described a device called a Memex, which, using a complex mechanical system of reels and microfilm, along with an encoding system, would allow users to jump between related frames of content. The Memex was never actually implemented, but it was an inspiration for later work on the idea of hypermedia.

The terms "hypertext" and "hypermedia" were coined in 1963 by Ted Nelson, who would go on to work on the *Hypertext Editing System* at Brown University and who later created the *File Retrieval and Editing System (FRESS)*, a shockingly advanced hypermedia system for its time. (This was perhaps the first digital system to have a notion of "undo"!)

While Nelson was working on his ideas, Douglas Engelbart was busy at work at the Stanford Research Institute, explicitly attempting to make Vannevar Bush's Memex a reality. In 1968, Engelbart gave "The Mother of All Demos" in San Francisco, California.

Engelbart demonstrated an unbelievable amount of technology:

- Remote, collaborative text editing with his peers in Menlo Park
- Video and audio chat
- An integrated windowing system, with window resizing, etc.
- A recognizable hypertext, whereby clicking on underlined text navigated to new content

Despite receiving a standing ovation from a shocked audience after his talk, it was decades before the technologies Englebart demonstrated became mainstream.

## Modern Implementation

In 1990, Tim Berners-Lee, working at CERN, published the first website. He had been working on the idea of hypertext for a decade and was finally, out of desperation at the fact it was so hard for researchers to share their research, found the right moment and institutional support to create the World Wide Web:

Creating the web was really an act of desperation, because the situation without it was very difficult when I was working at CERN later. Most of the technology involved in the web, like the hypertext, like the Internet, multifont text objects, had all been designed already. I just had to put them together. It was a step of generalising, going to a higher level of abstraction, thinking about all the documentation systems out there as being possibly part of a larger imaginary documentation system.

— Tim Berners-Lee, <https://britishheritage.org/tim-berners-lee-the-world-wide-web>

By 1994 The Web had grown so quickly that Berners-Lee founded the W3C, a working group of companies and researchers tasked with improving The Web. All standards created by the W3C were royalty-free and could be adopted and implemented by anyone, cementing the open, collaborative nature of The Web.

In 2000, Roy Fielding, then at U.C. Irvine, published a seminal PhD dissertation on The Web: "Architectural Styles and the Design of Network-based Software Architectures". Fielding had been working on the open source Apache HTTP Server and his thesis was a description of what he felt was a *new and distinct networking architecture* that had emerged in the early web. Fielding was responsible for the HTTP specification and, in the paper, defined the web's hypermedia network model using the term *REpresentationalState Transfer (REST)*.

Fielding's dissertation became a major touchstone for early web developers, giving them a language to discuss the new technical medium they were building applications in.

In a somewhat strange turn of events, many developers today are familiar with the term REST only in terms of JSON APIs, but it is important to remember that Fielding was describing *The Web*, that is, the hypermedia, HTML-based system he helped build with his thesis. JSON didn't even exist when he was writing!

We will discuss Fielding's dissertation in depth in Chapter 2, and try to correct the record with respect to REST, HATEOAS and hypermedia.

## 1.3. The World's Most Successful Hypertext: HTML

In the beginning was the hyperlink, and the hyperlink was with the web, and the hyperlink was the web. And it was good.

— Rescuing REST From the API Winter, <https://intercoolerjs.org/2016/01/18/rescuing-rest.html>

The system that Lee, Fielding and many others had created revolved around a hypermedia, HTML. HTML started as a read-only hypermedia, to publish (at first) academic documents. These documents were linked together via anchor tags, which created *hyperlinks* between them, allowing users of The Web to quickly navigate between documents.

When HTML 2.0 was released, it introduced the notion of a **form** tag, joining the anchor tag (i.e. hyperlink) as a second hypermedia control. The introduction of the form tag made building applications on The Web viable, by providing a mechanism for updating resources. It was at this point that The Web transitioned from an interesting document-oriented system to a compelling *application architecture*.

Today HTML is the most widely used hypermedia in existence, and this book naturally assumes that the reader has a reasonable familiarity with it. You do not need to be an HTML (or CSS) expert to understand the code in this book, but the better you understand the core tags and concepts of HTML, the more you will get out of it.

### The Essence of HTML

Let's consider the two defining hypermedia elements, that is the two defining *hypermedia controls* of HTML: the anchor tag (which produces a hyperlink) and the form tag.

#### Anchor Tags

Anchor tags are so common as to be boring, but, as the original hypermedia control, it is worth reviewing the mechanics of hyperlinks to get our minds in the right place for developing a deeper understanding of hypermedia.

Consider a simple anchor tag, embedded within a larger HTML document:

#### *A Simple Hyperlink*

```
<a href="https://hypermedia.systems/">
  Hypermedia Systems
</a>
```

An anchor tag consists of the tag itself (i.e. `<a></a>`) as well as attributes and content within the tag. Of particular interest is the **href** attribute, which specifies a *hypertext reference* to another document (or fragment, etc.). It is this attribute that makes the anchor tag a hypermedia control.

In a typical Web browser, this anchor tag would be interpreted to mean:

- Show the text 'Hypermedia Systems' in a manner indicating that it is clickable



- When the user clicks on that text, issue an HTTP **GET** to the url <https://hypermedia.systems/>
- Take the HTML content in the body of the HTTP response to this request and replace the entire screen in the browser as a new document, updating the navigation bar to this new URL

This is the main mechanism we use to navigate around the web today, and it is a canonical example of a hypermedia link, or a hyperlink.

Here is what a user interaction with an anchor tag/hyperlink looks like in visual form:

[figure 1 1 http mental model get] | *figure\_1-1\_http\_mental\_model\_get.png*

*Figure 1. An HTTP GET In Action*

You can see that when the link is clicked, the browser (or, as we sometimes call it, the *hypermedia client*) initiates an HTTP **GET** request to the given URL, encoded in the link.

Note that the HTTP request includes additional data (i.e. *metadata*) on what, exactly, the browser wants from the server, in the form of headers. We will discuss these headers, and HTTP in more depth in Chapter 2.

The *hypermedia server* then responds to the request with *hypermedia content*, that is, with the HTML for the new page. This may seem like a small and obvious point, but it is an absolutely crucial aspect of a truly REST-ful *hypermedia system*: the client and server must communicate via hypermedia!

## Form Tags

Anchor tags provide *navigation* between documents (or *resources*), but don't allow you to update them. That functionality falls to the form tag. Here is a simple example of one:

*A Simple Form*

```
<form action="/signup" method="post">
  <input type="text" name="email" placeholder="Enter Email To Sign Up..." />
  <button>Sign Up</button>
</form>
```

Like an anchor tag, a form tag consists of the tag itself (i.e. `<form></form>`) combined with attributes and then content within the tag. Note that the form tag does not have an **href** attribute, but rather has an **action** attribute that specifies where to issue an HTTP request to. Furthermore it also has a **method** attribute, which specifies exactly which HTTP "Method" to use. (In this case, the form is asking the browser to issue a **POST** request.)

The content *within* the form is also more important than the content is within an anchor tag. The values of **input** tags (and other tags such as **select**) will be included with the HTTP request when the form is *submitted*. This allows you to include an arbitrary amount of information collected from a user in a request, in contrast with the anchor tag.

Again, in a typical browser, this form tag and its contents would be interpreted by the browser roughly as follows:

- Show a text input and a "Sign Up" button to the user
- When the user submits the form by clicking the "Sign Up" button or by hitting the enter key while the input element is focused, issue an HTTP **POST** request to the path '/signup' on the "current" server
- Take the HTML content in the body of the HTTP response body and replace the entire screen in the browser as a new document, updating the navigation bar to this new URL

This mechanism allows the user to issue requests to *update state* on the server. Note that, despite this new type of request, the communication between client and server is done entirely with *hypermedia*. The form tag makes Hypermedia-Driven Applications possible.

If you are an experienced web developer, you probably recognize that I am omitting a few details and complications here: forms also allow you the option of issuing an HTTP `GET`, and the HTTP Response might *redirect* you to another URL, etc. This is true, and we will get down into the muck with forms more in later chapters, but for now this simple example suffices to demonstrate the core mechanism for updating system state purely within hypermedia.

Here is a diagram of the interaction:

[figure 1 1 http mental model post] | *figure\_1-1\_http\_mental\_model\_post.png*

*Figure 2. An HTTP POST In Action*

## Web 1.0 Applications

Now, as someone interested in web development, the above diagrams and discussion probably look very familiar to you, perhaps even boring. But consider the fact that these two hypermedia controls, anchors and forms, are really the *only* native ways for a user to interact with a server in plain HTML.

That's barely anything at all!

And yet, armed with only these two tools, the early web was able to grow exponentially and offer a staggeringly large amount of online, dynamic functionality to an even more staggeringly large number of people!

This is strong evidence of the power of hypermedia. Even today, in a web development world increasingly dominated by large JavaScript-centric front end frameworks, many people choose to simply use vanilla HTML to achieve their application goals, and are often perfectly happy with the results.

In their expressive power, these two small tags pack a heck of a punch.

## So What *Isn't* Hypermedia?

We have looked at the main two ways to interact with a server via hypermedia in HTML.

Now let's consider a different approach: let's interact with a server by issuing an HTTP request via JavaScript. To do this, we will use the `fetch()` API, a popular API for issuing an "Asynchronous JavaScript and XML", or AJAX request, available in all modern web browsers:

## JavaScript

```
<button onclick="fetch('/api/v1/contacts') ①  
    .then(response => response.json()) ②  
    .then(data => updateTable(data))"> ③  
    Fetch Contacts  
</button>
```

- ① Issue the request
- ② Convert the response to a JavaScript object
- ③ Invoke the `updateTable()` function with the object

This button has an `onclick` attribute which specifies some JavaScript to run when the button is clicked.

The JavaScript will issue an AJAX HTTP `GET` request to `/api/v1/contacts` using `fetch()`. An AJAX request is like a "normal" HTTP request in many ways, but it is issued "behind the scenes" by the browser: the user does not see a request indicator like in normal links and forms, and, unlike with hypermedia, it is up to the JavaScript code that issues the request to handle the response.

Despite AJAX having XML as part of its acronym, today the HTTP response to this request would almost certainly be in the JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) format rather than XML.

The HTTP response to this request might look something like this:

## JSON

```
{ ①  
  "id": 42, ②  
  "email" : "json-example@example.org" ③  
}
```

- ① The start of a JSON object
- ② A property, in this case with the name `id` and the value `42`
- ③ Another property, the email of the contact with this id

The JavaScript code above converts the JSON text received from the server into a JavaScript object, which is very easy when using the JSON notation. This object is then handed off to the `updateTable()` method. The `updateTable()` method would then update the UI based on the data that has been received from the server, perhaps appending this contact information to an existing table or replacing some other content with it.

(We aren't going to show the code for `updateTable()` because it isn't important for our discussion.)

The important, really, the crucial aspect of this server interaction is that it is *not* using hypermedia. The JSON API being used here does not return a hypermedia response. There are no *hyperlinks* or other hypermedia-style controls in it.

This is, rather, a *Data API*.

It is returning simple data: plain, JSON formatted data, without any hypermedia controls.

Note that, because the response is in JSON and is *not* hypermedia, it is up to the JavaScript code in the `updateTable()` method to understand how to turn this data into HTML. The code in `updateTable()` needs to know about the internal structure of the data:

- Exactly how the fields in the JSON data object are structured
- How they relate to one another
- How to update the local data this new data corresponds with
- How to render this data to the browser

In short, the logic in `updateTable()` needs to have intimate knowledge of the API endpoint at `/api/v1/contacts`.

## Single Page Applications

Now, this JavaScript, while very modest, is the organic beginnings of a concept much larger than this little button. It is the beginning of a *Single Page Application (SPA)*. The web application is no longer navigating *between* pages using hypermedia controls, as in our first two examples.

Instead, the application is exchanging *plain data* with the server and then updating the content *within* a single page. When this strategy (or, if you like, architecture) is adopted for an entire application, everything happens on a "Single Page" and, thus the application is a "Single Page Application."

This Single Page Application architecture is extremely popular today, and has been the dominant (at least in terms of mind-share and blog posts) approach to building web applications for the last decade.

Today, of course, the vast majority of Simple Page Applications adopt far more sophisticated frameworks for managing their user interface than this simple example shows. Popular libraries such as React, Angular, Vue.js, etc. are all common, and, indeed, standard, ways to manage far more complex user interactions than our little button achieves.

With these more complex frameworks you typically work with an elaborate client-side model (that is, JavaScript objects stored locally in the browser's memory that represent the "model" or "domain" of your application.) These JavaScript objects are updated via your JavaScript code and the framework then "reacts" to these updates, updating the user interface. When the user interface is updated by a user, these changes also flow *into* the model objects, establishing a "Two Way" binding mechanism: the model can update the UI and the UI can update the model.

All very sophisticated and, today, very popular. But it is important to know that developers that adopt this approach to building web applications rarely interact with hypermedia at all.

HTML will still be used to build user interfaces, true, but the *hypermedia* aspect of the two major hypermedia controls, anchors and forms, are de-emphasised. Neither interact with a server via their native *hypermedia* mechanism. Rather, they become mere user interface elements that drive local interactions with the in-memory domain model. This model is then synchronized with the server using plain data JSON APIs.

So, like our simple button above, the Single Page Application approach is, typically, *not* a hypermedia system. It does not take advantage of the natural REST-ful architecture of The Web, nor does it utilize the built-in functionality found in HTML's native hypermedia controls. An SPA is, in some sense, much more akin to a *thick client application*, like the client-server applications of the 1980s, popular *before* The Web came along.

## 1.4. Why Use Hypermedia?

The emerging norm for web development is to build a React single-page application, with server rendering. The two key elements of this architecture are something like:

1. The main UI is built & updated in JavaScript using React or something similar.
2. The backend is an API that that application makes requests against.

This idea has really swept the internet. It started with a few major popular websites and has crept into corners like marketing sites and blogs.

— Tom MacWright, <https://macwright.com/2020/05/10/spa-fatigue.html>

The JavaScript-based Single Page Application approach has taken the web development world by storm, and for good reason: It offers a far more interactive and immersive experience than the old, gronky, web 1.0 HTML (and hypermedia) based applications could. Some SPAs are able to rival *native* applications in their user experience and sophistication.

So, why on earth would you abandon this sexy, modern, popular (do a job search for reactjs!) approach for an older, less popular and less discussed one like hypermedia?

### JavaScript Fatigue

I'm glad you asked.

It turns out that the hypermedia architecture, even in its original form, has a number of advantages when compared with the Single Page Application + JSON Data API approach:

- It is an extremely simple approach to building web applications
- It is extremely tolerant of content and API changes (in fact, it thrives on them!)
- It leverages tried and true features of web browsers, such as caching

The first two advantages, in particular, address major pain points in modern web development:

- Single Page Application infrastructure has become extremely complex, often requiring an entire team to manage
- JSON API churn, constant changes made JSON APIs to support application needs, has become a major pain point for many application teams

These two problems, combined with other various issues (e.g. constant library turnover), are causing what has come to be known as "Javascript Fatigue": a general sense of exhaustion with all the hoops that are necessary to jump through to get anything done in web applications.

Our claim is that a hypermedia architecture *can* help cure Javascript Fatigue, for many developers and teams. But this begs the question: if hypermedia is as great as we claim, and if it can address many of the problems that so obviously beset the web development industry, why was hypermedia abandoned in the first place? After all, hypermedia was there first. Why didn't web developers just stick with it?

There are two main and related reasons for the state of affairs we find ourselves in.

The first is this: the expressiveness of HTML *as a hypermedia* hasn't changed much, if at all, since HTML 2.0, which was released *in the mid 1990s*. Many new *features* have been added to HTML, of course, but there haven't been *any* major new ways to interact with a server in HTML added in almost three decades!

HTML developers still only have anchor tags and forms available as hypermedia controls, and those hypermedia controls can still only issue **GET** and **POST** requests.

This baffling lack of progress by HTML leads immediately to the second, and perhaps more immediate reason that HTML-as-hypermedia has fallen on hard times: as the interactivity and expressiveness of HTML has remained frozen, the demands from web users has continued to increase, demanding more and more interactive web applications.

JavaScript, coupled to data-oriented JSON APIs, has stepped in as a way to provide these more sophisticated user interfaces for web applications. It was the *user experience* that you could achieve in JavaScript (and that you couldn't achieve in plain HTML) that drove the web development community over to the JavaScript-based Single Page Application approach.

This is unfortunate, and it didn't have to be this way. There is nothing *intrinsic* to the idea of hypermedia that prevents it from having a richer, more expressive interactivity model than vanilla HTML provides. Rather than abandoning the hypermedia architecture, the industry could have demanded more and more interactivity *within* that original model of the web. But the industry didn't. Instead of pushing hypermedia systems forward, the industry, on the whole, chose to retreat to the comfort and familiarity of Client-Server style applications.

Of course, not everyone abandoned hypermedia. There have been heroic efforts to continue to advance hypermedia outside of HTML, efforts like HyTime, VoiceXML, and HAL. But HTML, the most widely used hypermedia in the world, stopped making progress as a hypermedia, and the web development world moved on, solving the interactivity problems with HTML by adopting a completely different architecture.

## 1.5. A Hypermedia Resurgence?

For many developers today working in an industry dominated by JavaScript and SPA frameworks, hypermedia has become an afterthought, if it is thought about at all. Web developers feel that you simply can't get the sort of interactivity out of HTML that today's users demand of modern web applications.

It might be interesting to sit around thinking about ways that HTML *could* have advanced. That, instead of stalling as a hypermedia, HTML had continued to develop, adding new hypermedia controls and increasing the expressiveness of existing ones. That it had somehow become possible to build modern web applications within this original, hypermedia-oriented and REST-ful model that made the early web so powerful, so flexible, so... fun!

This sort of thing might seem like idle speculation, but I have some good news on this score: in the last decade, a few idiosyncratic, alternative front end libraries have arisen that attempt to get HTML moving again. Now, somewhat ironically, these libraries are all written in JavaScript, the technology that has supplanted HTML as the center of web development.

However, these libraries use JavaScript not as a *replacement* for the fundamental hypermedia architecture, but, instead, use it to augment HTML itself *as a hypermedia*.

These *hypermedia-oriented* libraries re-center hypermedia as a viable choice for your next web application.

## Hypermedia-Oriented Javascript Libraries

In the web development world today there is a debate going on between the SPA approach and what are now being called "Multi-Page Applications" or MPAs. MPAs are usually just the old, web 1.0 way of building web applications with links and forms across multiple web pages. These applications are thus, by their nature, hypermedia systems. They tend to be clunky, but, despite this clunkiness, they work reasonably well, and many web developers have decided to just accept the limitations of plain HTML, in the interest of simplicity and reliability.

Rich Harris, creator of svelte.js, a popular SPA library, and a thought-leader on the SPA side of the debate, propose a mix of this older MPA style and the SPA style. Harris calls this approach to building web applications "transitional", in that it attempts to mix both the MPA approach and the newer SPA approach into a coherent whole. This is somewhat similar to the "transitional" trend in architecture, which blends traditional and modern architectural styles together. "Transitional" a good term for these mixed-style applications and offers a reasonable compromise between the two, using either approach where it makes the most sense on an ad hoc basis.

But it still feels a bit unsatisfactory. Why have two very different architectural models *by default*? Recall that the crux of the tradeoffs between SPAs and MPAs is the *user experience* or interactivity of the application. This is typically the driving decision when choosing one approach versus the other for an application or, in the case of a "transitional" application, for a particular feature.

It turns out that by adopting a hypermedia oriented library, the interactivity gap between the MPA and SPA approach closes dramatically. You can stay in the simpler MPA, that is, hypermedia, model for much more of your application. Perhaps even all of it!

Rather than having an SPA with a bit of hypermedia around the edges, or some mix of the two approaches, you can often create a web application that is *primarily* or *entirely* hypermedia driven, and still satisfy the interactivity that your users require.

This can tremendously simplify your web application and provide a much more coherent and understandable piece of software. There are still times and places for a more complex SPA approach, and we will discuss those later in the book, but by adopting the hypermedia-first



approach and using a hypermedia-oriented library to push HTML as far as possible, your web application can be powerful, sexy *and* simple.

One such hypermedia oriented library is [htmx](#), created by the authors of this book. htmx will be the focus of much (but not all!) of the remainder of this book. We hope to show you that you can, in fact, create many common "modern" UI features found in sophisticated Single Page Applications using the hypermedia model.

And, not only that, but that it is refreshingly fun and simple to do so!

## Hypermedia Driven Applications

When building a web application with htmx the term Multi-Page Application applies *roughly*, but it doesn't really capture the crux of the application architecture. htmx, as you will see, does not need to replace entire pages and, in fact, an htmx-based application can reside entirely within a single page. (We don't recommend this practice, but it is certainly possible!)

Because of this, we like to emphasize the *hypermedia* aspect of both the older MPA approach and the newer htmx-based approach. Therefore, we use the term *Hypermedia Driven Applications (HDAs)* to describe both. This clarifies that the core distinction between these approaches and the SPA approach *isn't* the number of pages in the application, but rather the underlying *system* architecture.

### Hypermedia Driven Application (HDA)

A web application that uses *hypermedia* and *hypermedia exchanges* as its primary mechanism for communicating with a server.

What does an HDA look like "in the small"? Let's contrast what an htmx-powered button that implements similar functionality to our simple JavaScript-powered button might look like:

*an htmx implementation*

```
<button hx-get="/contacts" hx-target="#contact-table"> ①  
  Fetch Contacts  
</button>
```

① issues a **GET** request to `/contacts`, replacing the `contact-table`

As with the JavaScript powered button, we can see that this button has been annotated with some attributes. However, in this case we do not have any imperative scripting going on. Instead, we have *declarative* attributes, much like the `href` attribute on anchor tags and the `action` attribute on form tags. The `hx-get` attribute tells htmx: "When the user clicks this button, issue a **GET** request to `/contacts`". The `hx-target` attribute tells htmx: "When the response returns, take the resulting HTML and place it into the element with the id `contact-table`".

And here we get to the crux of htmx and how it allows you to build an HDA:

*The HTTP response from the server is expected to be in HTML format, not JSON*

This means that this button is exchanging *hypermedia* with the server, just like an anchor tag or



form might, and thus the interaction is still firmly within this original hypermedia model of the web. htmx is adding functionality to this button via JavaScript, but that functionality is *augmenting* HTML as a hypermedia, rather than *replacing* the network model with a data-oriented JSON API.

Despite perhaps looking superficially similar to one another, it turns out that this htmx-powered button and the JavaScript-based button are fundamentally extremely different architectures and approaches to web development. As we walk through building a Hypermedia Driven Application in this book, the differences between the two approaches will become more and more apparent.

## 1.6. When Should You Use Hypermedia?

Hypermedia is often, though *not always*, a great choice for a web application.

Perhaps you are building a web site or application that simply doesn't *need* a huge amount of user-experience innovation. There are many useful web applications like this, and there is no shame in it! Applications like Amazon, Ebay, any number of news sites, shopping sites, message boards and so on.

Perhaps your application adds most of its value on the *server side*, by coordinating users or by applying sophisticated data analysis and then presenting it to a user. Perhaps your application adds value by simply sitting in front of a well-designed database, with simple Create-Read-Update-Delete (CRUD) operations. Again, there is no shame in this!

In any of these cases, using a hypermedia approach would likely be a great choice: the interactivity needs of these applications are not dramatic, and much of the value of these applications lives on the server side, rather on than on the client side.

These applications are all amenable to what Roy Fielding, one of the original engineers who worked on the web, called "large-grain hypermedia data transfers": you can simply use anchor tags and forms, with responses that return entire HTML documents from requests, and things will work fine. This is exactly what the web was designed to do.

By adopting the hypermedia approach for these applications, you will save yourself a huge amount of client-side complexity that comes with adopting the Single Page Application approach: there is no need for client-side routing, for managing a client side model, for hand-wiring in JavaScript logic, and so forth. The back button will "just work". Deep linking will "just work". You will be able to focus your efforts on your server, where your application is actually adding value.

Now, by layering htmx or another hypermedia-oriented library on top of this approach, you can address many of the usability issues that come with vanilla HTML by taking advantage of finer-grained hypermedia transfers. This opens up a whole slew of new user interface and experience possibilities, making the set of applications that can be built using hypermedia *much* larger.

But more on that later.

## 1.7. When Shouldn't You Use Hypermedia?

So, what about that *not always*? When isn't hypermedia going to work well for an application?

One example that springs immediately to mind is an online spreadsheet application. In the case of a spreadsheet, updating one cell could have a large number of cascading changes that need to be made across the entire sheet. Worse, this might need to happen *on every keystroke*!

In this case we have a highly dynamic user interface without clear boundaries as to what might need to be updated given a particular change. Introducing a hypermedia-style server round-trip on every cell change would bog performance down tremendously.

This is simply not a situation amenable to that "large-grain hypermedia data transfer" approach. For an application like this we would certainly look into using a sophisticated client-side JavaScript approach.

*However*, even in the case of an online spreadsheet, there are likely areas where the hypermedia approach might help.

The spreadsheet application likely also has a settings page. And perhaps that settings page is amenable to the hypermedia approach. If it is simply a set of relatively straight-forward forms that need to be persisted to the server, the chances are good that hypermedia would, in fact, work great for this part of the app.

And, by adopting hypermedia for that part of your application, you might be able to simplify that part of the application quite a bit. You could then save more of your application's *complexity budget* for the core, complicated spreadsheet logic, keeping the simple stuff simple. Why waste all the complexity associated with a heavy JavaScript framework on something as simple as a settings page?

### **Your Complexity Budget**

Any software project has a complexity budget, explicit or not: there is only so much complexity a given development team can tolerate and every new feature and implementation choice adds at least a bit more to the overall complexity of the system.

What is particularly nasty about complexity is that it appears to grow exponentially: one day you can keep the entire system in your head and understand the ramifications of a particular change, and a week later the whole system seems intractable. Even worse, efforts to help control complexity, such as introducing abstractions or infrastructure to manage the complexity, often end up making things even more complex. Truly, the job of the good software engineer is to keep complexity under control.

The surefire way to keep complexity down is also the hardest: say no. Pushing back on feature requests is an art and, if you can learn to do it well, making people feel like *they* said no, you will go far.

Sadly this is not always possible: some features will need to be built. At this point the question becomes: "what is the simplest thing that could possibly work?" Understanding the possibilities available in the hypermedia approach will give you another tool in your "simplest thing" tool chest.

## 1.8. Hypermedia: A Sophisticated, Modern System Architecture

Hypermedia, if it is thought of at all, is typically regarded as an old and antiquated technology, useful perhaps for websites but certainly not a realistic choice for modern, sophisticated web applications. Of course, even the most modern of Single Page Applications is *launched* using hypermedia, and, yes, things like deep links sure were nice, but, seriously? A large, modern web application built using it?

Yes, seriously.

Contrary to current popular opinion, hypermedia is an *innovative* and *modern* system architecture for building applications, in some ways *more modern* than the prevailing Single Page Application approaches! In the remainder of this book we will reintroduce you to the core, practical concepts of hypermedia and then demonstrate exactly how you can take advantage of this system architecture in your own software.

We hope that, by the end of the book, not only will you have a firm understanding of all the benefits and techniques enabled by this approach, but that you will also be as passionate about it as we are. At some level, this book is a plea that we "let the web be the web", that we take the original architecture of this amazing tool we all use every day, The World Wide Web, seriously, and give it a fair hearing. And, not only that, that we push that amazing architecture forward, not only on the web, but also in other areas, like mobile.

We hope that you'll agree with us, at least in part, and we hope that you'll be excited enough to tell a friend about hypermedia.

# Chapter 2. Components Of A Hypermedia System

A *hypermedia system* consists of a number of facets that come together to make the entire distributed system work, including:

- A hypermedia, such as HTML
- A network protocol, such as HTTP
- A server that presents a hypermedia API, that is, that responds to network requests with hypermedia responses
- A client that properly interprets those responses

In this chapter we will take an in-depth look at each of these aspects and explore their specifics in the context of The Web.

We have already mentioned Roy Fielding's dissertation, "Architectural Styles and the Design of Network-based Software Architectures", and part of this chapter will be a review of this dissertation, in particular Chapter 5 of the dissertation. Chapter 5 is what gave us the terms REST, REST-ful and, indirectly, HATEOAS.

Hypermedia systems will typically naturally implement the REST architecture style, particularly if they are built on top of The Web, which is the distributed system that Roy Fielding was describing. But before we show how a hypermedia system implements REST, and why that is important, let's go over the components that make one up.

## 2.1. Hypermedia

The fundamental technology of a hypermedia system is a particular hypermedia or multiple hypermedia that allow a client and server to communicate with one another in a dynamic, non-linear fashion. We have already mentioned the two primary hypermedia controls in HTML, anchors and forms, which allow a browser to present a series of links and operations to a user through a browser.

In the case of HTML, these links and forms typically specify the target of their operations using Universal Resource Locators (URLs):

### Universal Resource Locator

A universal resource locator is a textual string that refers to, or *points to* a location on a network where a *resource* can be retrieved from, as well as the mechanism by which the resource can be retrieved.

A URL is a string consisting of various subcomponents:

#### URL Components

```
[scheme]://[userinfo]@[host]:[port][path]?[query]#[fragment]
```

Many of these subcomponents are not required, and are often omitted.

A typical URL might look like this:

*A simple URL*

```
https://hypermedia.systems/book
```

This particular URL is made up of the following components:

- A protocol or scheme (in this case **https**)
- A domain (in this case **hypermedia.systems**)
- A path (in this case **/book**)

This URL uniquely identifies a retrievable *resource* on the internet, to which an *HTTP Request* can be issued by a hypermedia client that "speaks" HTTPS, such as a web browser. If this URL is found as the reference of a hypermedia control within an HTML document, it implies that there is a *hypermedia server* on the other side of the network that understands HTTPS as well, and that can respond to this request with a *representation* of the given resource (or redirect you to another location, etc.)

Note that URLs are often not written out entirely within HTML. It is very common to see anchor tags that look like this, for example:

*A Simple Link*

```
<a href="/table-of-contents">Table Of Contents</a>
```

Here we have a *relative* hypermedia reference, where the protocol and host are *implied* to be that of the "current document", that is, the same as whatever the protocol and server were to retrieve the current HTML page. So, if this link was found in an HTML document retrieved from <https://hypermedia.systems/>, then the implied URL for this anchor would be <https://hypermedia.systems/table-of-contents>.

## 2.2. Hypermedia Protocols

The anchor tag above tells a browser: "When a user clicks on this link, issue request to <https://hypermedia.systems/table-of-contents> using the HyperText Transfer Protocol", or HTTP.

HTTP is the *protocol* used to transfer HTML (hypermedia) between browsers (hypermedia clients) and servers (hypermedia servers) and, as such, is the key network technology that binds the distributed hypermedia system of The Web together.

HTTP version 1.1 is a relatively simple network protocol, so let's take a look at what the **GET** request triggered by the anchor tag would look like. This is the request that would be sent to the server found at **hypermedia.systems**, on port **80** by default:

```
GET /table-of-contents HTTP/1.1
Accept: text/html, */*
Host: hypermedia.systems
```

The first line specifies that this is an HTTP **GET** request. It then specifies the path of the resource being requested. Finally, it contains the HTTP version for this request.

After that are a series of *HTTP Request Headers*, individual lines of name/value pairs, separated by a colon, which provide *metadata* that can be used by the server to determine exactly how to respond to the client request. In this case, with the **Accept** header, the browser is saying it would prefer HTML as a response format, but will accept anything that the server responds with. Next, it has a **Host** header, which specifies the server that the request has been sent to. This is useful when multiple domains are hosted on the same host.

An HTTP response from a server to this request might look something like this:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Content-Type: text/html; charset=utf-8
Content-Length: 870
Server: Werkzeug/2.0.2 Python/3.8.10
Date: Sat, 23 Apr 2022 18:27:55 GMT

<html lang="en">
<body>
<h1>Table Of Contents</h1>
<ul>
  <li><a href="/chapter-1">Chapter 1</a></li>
  ...
</body>
</html>
```

In the first line, the HTTP Response specifies the HTTP version being used, followed by a *response code* of **200**, indicating that the given resource was found and that the request succeeded. This is followed by a string, **OK** that corresponds to the response code. (The actual string doesn't matter, it is the response code that tells the client the result of a request, as we will discuss in more detail below.)

After the first line of the response, as with the HTTP Request, we see a series of *Response Headers* that provide metadata to the client to assist in displaying the *representation* of the resource correctly.

Finally, we see some new HTML content. This content is the HTML *representation* of the requested resource, in this case a table of contents of a book. The browser will use this HTML to replace the entire content in its display window, showing the user this new page, and updating the address bar to reflect the new URL.

## HTTP Methods

The anchor tag above issued an HTTP **GET**, where `GET` is the *method* of the request. The particular method being used in an HTTP request is perhaps the most important piece of information about it, after the actual resource that the request is directed at.

There are many methods available in HTTP; the ones of most practical importance to developers are the following:

<b>GET</b>	A GET request retrieves the representation of the specified resource. GET requests should not mutate data.
<b>POST</b>	A POST request submits data to the specified resource. This will often result in a mutation of state on the server.
<b>PUT</b>	A PUT request replaces the data of the specified resource. This results in a mutation of state on the server.
<b>PATCH</b>	A PATCH request replaces the data of the specified resource. This results in a mutation of state on the server.
<b>DELETE</b>	A DELETE request deletes the specified resource. This results in a mutation of state on the server.

These methods roughly line up with the "Create/Read/Update/Delete" or CRUD pattern found in many applications:

- **POST** corresponds with Creating a resource
- **GET** corresponds with Reading a resource
- **PUT** and **PATCH** correspond with Updating a resource
- **DELETE** corresponds, well, with Deleting a resource

In a properly structured HTML-based hypermedia system you should use the appropriate HTTP method for the operation a given hypermedia control performs: If a hypermedia control such as a button *deletes* a resource, for example, ideally it should an HTTP **DELETE** request to do so.

## HTML & HTTP Methods

A strange thing about HTML is that, despite being the world's most popular hypermedia and despite being designed alongside HTTP (which is the Hypertext Transfer Protocol, after all), the native hypermedia controls in HTML can only issue HTTP **GET** and **POST** requests:

Anchor tags always issue a **GET** request.

Forms can issue either a **GET** or **POST** using the **method** attribute.

Forms and anchor tags *can't* issue **PUT**, **PATCH** or **DELETE** requests! If you wish to issue these last three types of requests, you currently have to resort to JavaScript to do so.

This is an obvious shortcoming of HTML as a hypermedia, and it is hard to understand why this hasn't been fixed in the HTML specification yet, but here we are.

### HTTP Response Codes

HTTP Request methods allow client to tell a server *what* to do to a given resource. HTTP Responses contain *response codes*, which tell a client what the result of the request was. HTTP response codes are numeric values that are embedded in the HTTP response, as we saw above.

The most familiar response code for most web developers is probably **404**, which stands for "Not Found". This is the response code that is returned by web servers when a resource that does not exist is requested from them.

HTTP breaks response codes up into various categories:

<b>100-199</b>	Informational responses that provide information about how the server is processing the response
<b>200-299</b>	Successful responses indicating that the request succeeded
<b>300-399</b>	Redirection responses indicating that the request should be sent to some other URL
<b>400-499</b>	Client error responses indicating that the client made some sort of bad request (e.g. asking for something that didn't exist in the case of <b>404</b> errors)
<b>500-599</b>	Server error responses indicating that the server encountered an error internally as it attempted to respond to the request

Within each of these categories there are multiple response codes for specific situations.

Here are some of the more common or interesting ones:

<b>200 OK</b>	The HTTP request succeeded
<b>301 Moved Permanently</b>	The URL for the requested resource has moved to a new location permanently, and the new URL will be provided in the <b>Location</b> response header



302 Found	The URL for the requested resource has moved to a new location temporarily, and the new URL will be provided in the <b>Location</b> response header
303 See Other	The URL for the requested resource has moved to a new location, and the new URL will be provided in the <b>Location</b> response header. Additionally, this new URL should be retrieved with a <b>GET</b> request.
401 Unauthorized	The client is not yet authenticated (yes, authenticated, despite the name) and must be authenticated to retrieve the given resource.
403 Forbidden	The client does not have access to this resource.
404 Not Found	The server cannot find the requested resource.
500 Internal Server Error	The server encountered an error when attempting to process the request.

There are some fairly subtle differences (and, to be honest, some ambiguities) when it comes to HTTP response codes. The difference between a **302** redirect and a **303** redirect, for example, is that the former will issue the request to the new URL using the same HTTP method, while the latter will always use a **GET**. A small, but often crucial difference, as we will see later in the book.

Nonetheless, a well crafted hypermedia system will take advantage of both HTTP methods and HTTP response codes to create a sensible hypermedia API. You do not want to build a hypermedia system that uses a **POST** method for all requests and responds with **200 OK** for every response. Some JSON APIs, which are often built on top of HTTP, do exactly this!

When building a Hypermedia-Driven Application, you want, instead, to go "with the grain" of The Web and use HTTP methods and response codes as they were designed to be used.

## 2.3. Hypermedia Servers

Hypermedia servers are any server that can respond to an HTTP request with an HTTP response. Because HTTP is so simple, this means that nearly any programming language can be used to build a hypermedia server. And so we find it: there are libraries available for building HTTP-based hypermedia servers in nearly every programming language imaginable.

### Hypermedia On Whatever you'd Like (HOWL)

This is one very nice aspect of adopting hypermedia as your primary technology for building a web application: it takes a tremendous amount of pressure off adopting a particular back-end technology. When you decide to adopt a JavaScript-based SPA front end, using JSON Data APIs, you will feel pressure to adopt JavaScript on the back end.

You already have a ton of code written in JavaScript, so why maintain two separate code bases in two different languages? Why not create reusable domain logic on the client-side as well as the server-side? Now that JavaScript has excellent server side technologies available like node and deno, why not just a single language for everything?

In contrast, by using a hypermedia-based front end you have a lot more freedom in picking the back end technology appropriate to the problem domain you are addressing. You certainly aren't writing your server side logic in HTML. And nearly every programming language has at least one

good web framework and templating library that can produce HTML cleanly.

If you are doing something in big data, perhaps you'd like to use Python, which has tremendous support for that domain.

If you are doing AI work, perhaps you'd like to use Lisp, leaning on a language with a long history in that area of research.

Maybe you are a functional programming enthusiast and want to use OCaml or Haskell. Perhaps you just really like Julia or Nim. These are all perfectly valid reasons for choosing a particular server side technology!

By using hypermedia as your system architecture, you are freed up to adopt any of these choices. There simply isn't a large JavaScript code base on the front end pressuring you to adopt JavaScript on the back end.

In the htmx community, as a joke, this is called the HOWL stack: Hypermedia On Whatever you'd Like. The htmx community is multi-language and multi-framework, there are rubyists as well as pythonistas, lispers as well as haskellers. There are even JavaScript enthusiasts! All these languages and frameworks are able to adopt hypermedia, and to share and support one another.

Hypermedia, in this sense, provides a "universal language" for The Web that we can all use.

## 2.4. Hypermedia Clients

Hypermedia *clients* are software that understand how to interpret a particular hypermedia properly. The canonical example, of course, is the web browser, which understand HTML and can present it to a user to interact with. Web browsers are incredibly sophisticated pieces of software, so sophisticated, in fact, that they are often re-purposed away from being a hypermedia client, to being a sort of cross-platform virtual machine for launching Single Page Applications.

Browsers aren't the only hypermedia clients out there, however. In the last section of this book we will look at HyperView, a mobile-oriented hypermedia. One of the outstanding features of HyperView is that it doesn't simply provide a hypermedia, HXML, but also provides a *hypermedia client* for that hypermedia. This makes building a proper hypermedia system with HyperView much, much easier and, in our estimation, demonstrates that a good hypermedia *client* is as crucial to the technical success of a particular hypermedia as the design of the hypermedia itself.

A crucial feature of hypermedia is *the uniform interface*, discussed in the next section on REST, and the HyperView client implements this crux concept. See Chapter [TODO:reference](#) for more details if you are interested in this important aspect of hypermedia.

## 2.5. REST

Now that we have reviewed the major components of a hypermedia system, it's time to look more deeply into the concept of REST. The term "REST" comes from Chapter 5 of Roy Fielding's PhD dissertation on the architecture of the web. Fielding wrote his dissertation at U.C. Irvine, after having helped build much of the infrastructure of the early web, including the Apache web server. Roy was attempting to formalize and describe the novel distributed computing system that he had

helped to build.

We are going to focus in on what we feel is the most important section of Fielding's dissertation, from a web development perspective: Section 5.1. This section contains the core concepts (Fielding calls them *constraints*) of Representational State Transfer, or REST.

Before we get into the muck, however, it is important to understand that Fielding considers REST a *network architecture*, that is an entirely different way of architecting a distributed system. And a novel one that should be *contrasted* with earlier distributed systems.

It is also important to emphasize that, at the time Fielding wrote his dissertation, JSON APIs and AJAX did not exist. He was describing the early web, with HTML being transferred over HTTP by early browsers, as a hypermedia system.

Today, in a strange turn of events, the term "REST" is mainly associated with JSON Data APIs, rather than with HTML and hypermedia. This becomes extremely humorous once you realize that the vast majority of JSON Data APIs aren't REST-ful, and, in fact *can't* be REST-ful, since they aren't using a hypermedia format.

To re-emphasise: REST, as coined by Fielding, describes *the pre-JSON API web*, and letting go of the current, common usage of the term as "JSON API" is necessary to develop a proper understanding of it.

## The "Constraints" of REST

In his dissertation, Fielding defines various "constraints" to describe how a REST-ful system must behave. This approach can feel a little round-about and difficult to follow for many people, but it is an appropriate approach for an academic dissertation. Given a bit of time thinking about the constraints he outlines, and some concrete examples, it will become easy to understand if a given system actually satisfies the architectural requirements of REST or not.

Here are the constraints of REST, which are outlined in Section 5.1 of his dissertation:

- It is a client-server architecture (section 5.1.2)
- It must be stateless (section 5.1.3) that is, every request contains all information necessary to respond to that request
- It must allow for caching (section 5.1.4)
- It must have a *uniform interface* (section 5.1.5)
- It is a layered system (section 5.1.6)
- Optionally, can allow for Code-On-Demand (section 5.1.7), that is, scripting.

Let's go through each of these constrains in turn and discuss them in detail.

## The Client-Server Constraint

See [Section 5.1.2](#) for the Client-Server constraint.

Obviously, the REST model Fielding was describing involved both *clients* (that is, Web Browsers)

and *servers* (such as the Apache Web Server he had been working on) communicating via a network connection. This was the context of his work: he was describing the **network architecture** of the World Wide Web, and contrasting it with earlier architectures, notably thick-client networking models such as the Common Object Request Broker Architecture (CORBA).

It should be obvious that any web application, regardless of how it is designed, is going to satisfy this requirement.

## The Statelessness Constraint

See [Section 5.1.3](#) for the Stateless constraint.

As described by Fielding, a REST-ful system is stateless: every request should encapsulate all information necessary to respond to that request, with no side state or context stored on the server.

In practice, for many web applications today, we actually violate this constraint: it is common to establish a *session cookie* that acts as a unique identifier for a given user and that is sent along with every request. While this session cookie is, by itself, not stateful (it is sent with every request), it is typically used as a key to look up information stored on the server side, in what is usually termed "the session". This session information is typically stored in some sort of shared storage across multiple web servers, holding things like the current users email or id, their roles, partially created domain objects, caches, and so forth.

This violation of the Statelessness REST architectural constraints has proven to be useful for building web applications and, for the most part, does not appear to have had a significant impact on the overall flexibility of the approach.

It should be noted, however, that sessions do cause additional operational complexity headaches when deploying hypermedia servers, which now may need to have shared access to the session state information stored across an entire cluster.

## The Caching Constraint

See [Section 5.1.4](#) for the Caching constraint.

This constraint states that a RESTful system should support the notion of caching, with explicit information on the cacheability of requests for future requests of the same resource. This allows both clients as well as intermediary servers between a given client and server to cache the results of a given request.

As we discussed above, HTTP has a sophisticated caching mechanism via Response headers that is often overlooked or underutilized when building hypermedia applications. Given the existence of this functionality, however, it is easy to see how this constraint is satisfied by HTTP in the web.

## The Uniform Interface Constraint

Now we come to the most interesting and, in our opinion, innovative constraint in REST: the *uniform interface*. This constraint is the source of much of the *flexibility* and *simplicity* of a hypermedia system, so we are going to spend a lot of time on it.

See [Section 5.1.5](#) for the Uniform Interface constraint.

In this section, Fielding says:

The central feature that distinguishes the REST architectural style from other network-based styles is its emphasis on a uniform interface between components... In order to obtain a uniform interface, multiple architectural constraints are needed to guide the behavior of components. REST is defined by four interface constraints: identification of resources; manipulation of resources through representations; self-descriptive messages; and, hypermedia as the engine of application state

— Roy Fielding, *Architectural Styles and the Design of Network-based Software Architectures*

So we have four additional sub-constraints that, taken together, form the Uniform Interface constraint.

### Identification of Resources

In a REST-ful system, resources should have a unique identifier. Today the concept of Universal Resource Locators (URLs) is common, but at the time of Fielding's writing they were still relatively new and novel.

What might be more interesting today is the notion of a *resource*, thus being identified: in a REST-ful system, *any* sort of data that can be referenced, that is, the target of a hypermedia reference, is considered a resource. URLs, though common enough today, end up solving the very complex problem of uniquely identifying any and every resource on the internet.

### Manipulation of Resources Through Representations

In a REST-ful system, *representations* of the resource are transferred between clients and servers. These representations can contain both data and metadata about the request (such as "control data" like an HTTP action or response code). A particular data format or *media type* may be used to present a given resource to a client, and that media type can be negotiated between the client and the server.

We saw this latter aspect of the uniform interface in the **Accept** header in the requests above.

### Self-Descriptive Messages

This constraint, along with the next one, form what we consider to be the core of the Uniform Interface, of REST and why, in our opinion, hypermedia is such a powerful network architecture: in a REST-ful system, messages must be *self-describing*.

This means that *all information* necessary to both display *and also operate* on the data being represented must be present in the response. In a properly REST-ful system, there can be no additional "side" information necessary for client to transform a response from a server into a

useful user interface. Everything must "be in" the message itself.

This might sound a little abstract, so perhaps an example will help clarify.

Let's consider two different potential responses from of an HTTP server for the URL <https://example.com/contacts/42>. Both responses will return information about a contact, but they will take very different forms.

The first implementation returns an HTML representation:

```
<html lang="en">
<head>
<h1>Joe Smith</h1>
<div>
  <div>Email: joe@example.bar</div>
  <div>Status: Active</div>
</div>
<p>
  <a href="/contacts/42/archive">Archive</a>
</p>
</main>
</body>
</html>
```

The second implementation returns a JSON representation:

```
{
  "name": "Joe Smith",
  "email": "joe@example.org",
  "status": "Active"
}
```

What can we say about the differences between these two responses?

One thing that may initially jump out at you is that the JSON representation is smaller than the HTML representation. This is certainly true, and Fielding notes exactly this tradeoff when using a REST-ful architecture in his dissertation:

The trade-off, though, is that a uniform interface degrades efficiency, since information is transferred in a standardized form rather than one which is specific to an application's needs.

— Roy Fielding, *Architectural Styles and the Design of Network-based Software Architectures*

So REST *trades off* representational efficiency for other goals.

To understand these other goals, first notice that the HTML representation has a hyperlink in it to navigate to a page to archive the contact. The JSON representation, in contrast, does not have this

link.

What are the ramifications of this fact for a client of the JSON API?

What this means is that the JSON API client must know **in advance** exactly what other URLs (and request methods) are available for working with the contact information. If the JSON client is able to update this contact in some way, it must know how to do so from some source of information *external* to the JSON message. Is if the contact has a different status, say "Archived", does this change the allowable actions? If so, what are the new allowable actions?

The source of all this information might be API documentation, word of mouth or, if the developer controls both the server and the client, internal knowledge. But it is *outside* the message.

The hypermedia (or HTML) client, on the other hand, needs only to know how to render the given HTML. It doesn't need to understand what actions are available for this contact: they are simply encoded *within* the HTML itself. It doesn't need to understand what the status field means or, in fact, what a contact even is!

The browser, our hypermedia client, simply renders the HTML and allows the user, who presumably understands the concept of a Contact, to make a decision on what action to pursue from the actions made available in the representation.

This difference between the two responses demonstrates the crux of REST and hypermedia, what makes them so powerful and flexible: clients (that is, web browsers) don't need to understand *anything* about the underlying resources being represented.

Browsers only (only! As if it is easy!) need to understand how to parse and display hypermedia, in this case HTML. This gives hypermedia-based systems unprecedented flexibility in dealing with changes to both the backing representations and to the system itself. This will become more apparent as we further explore this idea below.

## Hypermedia As The Engine of Application State (HATEOAS)

The final sub-constraint on the Uniform Interface is that, in a REST-ful system, hypermedia should be "the engine of application state". This is sometimes abbreviated as "HATEOAS", although Fielding prefers to use the terminology "the hypermedia constraint" when discussing it.

This constraint is closely related to the previous self-describing message constraint. Let us consider again the two different implementations of the end point `/contacts/42`, one returning HTML and one returning JSON. Let's update the situation such that the contact identified by this URL has now been archived.

What do our responses look like?

The first implementation returns the following HTML:

```
<html lang="en">
<head>
<h1>Joe Smith</h1>
<div>
  <div>Email: joe@example.bar</div>
  <div>Status: Archived</div>
</div>
<p>
  <a href="/contacts/42/unarchive">Unarchive</a>
</p>
</main>
</body>
</html>
```

The second implementation returns the following JSON representation:

```
{
  "name": "Joe Smith",
  "email": "joe@example.org",
  "status": "Archived"
}
```

The important point to notice here is that, by virtue of being a self-describing message, the HTML response now shows that the "Archive" operation is no longer available, and a new "Unarchive" operation has become available. The HTML representation of the contact **encodes** the state of the application (that is, exactly what can and cannot be done with this particular representation) in a way that the JSON representation does not.

A client interpreting the JSON response must, again, understand not only the general concept of a Contact, but also specifically what the "status" field with the value "Archived" means. It must know exactly what operations are available on an "Archived" contact, to appropriately display them to an end user. The state of the application, in this situation is not encoded in the response, but rather in a mix of raw data and side channel information such as API documentation.

Furthermore, in the majority of front end SPA frameworks today, this contact information would live *in memory* in a Javascript object representing a model of the contact. The DOM would be updated based on changes to this model, that is, the DOM would "react" to changes to this backing javascript model.

This approach is certainly *not* using Hypermedia As The Engine Of Application State: rather, it is using a javascript model as the engine of application state, and synchronizing that model with a server and with the browser.

With the HTML approach, the Hypermedia is, indeed, The Engine Of Application State: there is no additional model on the client side, and all state is expressed directly in the hypermedia, in this case HTML. As state changes on the server, it is reflected in the representation (that is, HTML) sent back to the client. The hypermedia client (a browser) doesn't know anything about contacts, what the concept of "Archiving" is, or anything else about the particular domain model for this response:



it simply knows how to render HTML.

Because a hypermedia client doesn't need to know anything about the server model beyond how to render hypermedia to a client, it is incredibly flexible with respect to the representations it receives and displays to users.

## HATEOAS & API Churn

Because this last concept is so important to understand in order to appreciate the flexibility of hypermedia, let's look at a practical example of it in action: consider a situation where a new feature has added the web applications offering these two end points. This feature allows you to send a message to a given Contact.

How would this change the two responses from the server?

The HTML representation might now look like this:

```
<html lang="en">
<head>
<h1>Joe Smith</h1>
<div>
  <div>Email: joe@example.bar</div>
  <div>Status: Active</div>
</div>
<p>
  <a href="/contacts/42/archive">Archive</a>
  <a href="/contacts/42/message">Message</a>
</p>
</main>
</body>
</html>
```

The JSON representation might look like this:

```
{
  "name": "Joe Smith",
  "email": "joe@example.org",
  "status": "Active"
}
```

Note that, once again, the JSON representation is unchanged. There is no indication of this new functionality. Instead, a client must **know** about the change, presumably via some shared documentation between the client and the server.

Contrast this with the HTML response. Because of the uniform interface of the REST-ful model and, in particular, because we are using Hypermedia As The Engine of Application State, no such exchange of documentation is necessary! Instead, the client (a browser) simply renders the new HTML with this operation in it, making this operation available for the end user without any

additional coding changes.

A pretty neat trick!

Now, in this case, if the JSON client is not properly updated, the error state is relatively benign: a new bit of functionality is simply not made available to users. But consider a more severe change to the API: what if the archive functionality was removed? Or what if the URLs or HTTP actions for these operations changed in some way?

In this case, the JSON client may be broken in a much more serious manner.

The HTML response, however, would be simply updated to exclude the removed options or to update the URLs used for them. Clients would see the new HTML, display it properly, and allow users to select whatever the new set of operations happens to be. Once again, the uniform interface of REST has proven to be extremely flexible: despite a potentially radically new layout for our hypermedia API, clients continue to keep working.

An important fact falls out of this: because of this flexibility, hypermedia APIs **do not have the versioning headaches that JSON Data APIs do**.

Once a Hypermedia Driven Application has been "entered" (that is, navigated to through some entry point URL), all functionality and resources are surfaced through self-describing messages. Therefore, there is no need to exchange documentation with clients: the clients simply render the hypermedia (in this case HTML) and everything works out. When a change occurs, there is no need to create a new version of the API: clients simply retrieve updated hypermedia, which encodes the new operations and resources in it, and display it to users to work with.

This is one of the

## Layered System

The Layered System constraint can be found in [Section 5.1.6](#)

After the excitement of the uniform interface constraint, the "layered system" constraint is a bit boring, although still very useful: the REST-ful architecture is layered, allowing for multiple servers to act as intermediaries between the client and the eventual "source of truth" server.

These intermediary servers can act as proxies, transform intermediate requests and responses and so forth.

A common modern example of this layering feature of REST is the use of Content Delivery Networks (CDNs) to deliver unchanging static assets to clients more quickly, by storing the response from the origin server in intermediate servers more closely located to the client making a request.

This allows content to be delivered more quickly to the end user and reduces load on the origin server.

## An Optional Constraint: Code-On-Demand

The final constraint imposed on a REST-ful system is, somewhat awkwardly, described as an "optional constraint", and can be found here: <https://www.ics.uci.edu/~fielding/pubs/dissertation/>

In this section, Fielding says:

REST allows client functionality to be extended by downloading and executing code in the form of applets or scripts. This simplifies clients by reducing the number of features required to be pre-implemented. Allowing features to be downloaded after deployment improves system extensibility. However, it also reduces visibility, and thus is only an optional constraint within REST.

— Roy Fielding, *Architectural Styles and the Design of Network-based Software Architectures*

So, scripting *was* and *is* a native aspect of the original REST-ful model of the web, and, thus something that should of course be allowed in a Hypermedia Driven Application.

However, in a Hypermedia Driven Application the presence of scripting should *not* change the fundamental networking model: hypermedia should still be the engine of application state and server communication should still consist of hypermedia exchanges rather than, for example, JSON data exchanges.

Today, unfortunately, the scripting layer of the web, JavaScript, is quite often used to *replace*, rather than augment the hypermedia model. It is against this trend that this book is written. This does not mean that scripting should not be allowed in a hypermedia application, but rather that it should be done in a certain manner consistent with the REST-ful approach.

## 2.6. Conclusion

After this deep dive into Chapter 5 of Roy Fielding's dissertation, I hope you have much better understanding of REST, and in particular, the uniform interface and HATEOAS. And I hope you can see *why* these characteristics make hypermedia systems so flexible.

If you didn't really appreciate what REST and HATEOAS meant before now, don't feel bad: it took me over a decade of working in web development, and building a hypermedia-oriented library to boot, to realize just how special HTML, hypermedia and The Web is.

# Chapter 3. Effective HTML

## Why relearn HTML?

The way most of us write HTML is iterative: we write something, *Alt-Tab* to the browser to see if it works, and go back to edit. The fact that we can do this is one of the best things about web development --- being able to immediately see the system as end users will makes development faster, increases developer happiness and encourages a focus on UX.

This workflow has one unfortunate side effect: Our development becomes driven by our own usage, and any other use of a website becomes an afterthought:

- Pages are bloated with `<div>` soup, and stylesheets are big as a result of trying to select elements in that mess. The result is slow loading times. <sup>[1]</sup>
- Websites, including websites containing public data or results of publicly-funded research, are impossible to scrape programmatically.
- So-called MVPs (minimum viable product) are released in open beta while being completely unusable by vast swathes of people — UX not just buggy, but nonexistent <sup>[2]</sup>. Is an inaccessible product "viable"?
- Search engines have a harder time extracting useful information from a page, and rank that page lower as a result.

If you care about machine readability, or human readability, or page weight, what you should do is test. Did you think I was going to talk about semantic HTML? Keep reading for that, but alas, there is no substitute for testing. Test manually. Test automatically. Test with screenreaders, test with a keyboard, test on different browsers and hardware, run linters (while coding and/or in CI). Read the markup — the markup being sent to browsers, not the templates and code you write. Know exactly what any type of hypermedia client is doing in any circumstance.

So where does HTML and the s-word come in?

Writing good, spec-compliant HTML lets browsers do a bunch of work for you. When they don't, it makes it easier to write scripts that do. As a result, fewer issues will be found during this testing and you can release faster. When issues do come up, you can often fix them more easily by rewriting semantic HTML as opposed to heaping JavaScript and ARIA attributes on top of everything.

Good HTML will not absolve you from doing your job, but it will make it easier.

### 3.1. A note on the S-word

Semantics is standardization.

In human language, a word can only mean something if some group of people know it to mean that thing. You could define your own words and use them (mathematicians really like to) but it's difficult. Not only will you need to provide a definition each time you use it, but you also need an audience interested enough to read and remember that definition.

Any hypermedia format which lets documents define their own elements is an infinite universe of "fetch"-es that it needs to make happen. We renounce the schematamania that plagues many hypermedia discussions. Instead, when we talk about semantics, we talk about the simple act of using elements in accordance with their specified meaning.

Instead of being extensible through schemasi or namespaces, or whatever DTDs are, HTML is extended in two ways:

- Ad-hoc extensibility. HTML is a fault-tolerant language, choosing to ignore things it doesn't recognize instead of throwing errors. This means you can use unspecified attributes. `htmlx` relies on this heavily. If extensions see common acceptance, they might even be incorporated into specifications! (We can dream.)
- Extension slots. Things like classes, `<meta>` tags and `data-` attributes are made for custom data. They can be used to build meta-languages embedded in HTML.

This might seem like a downgrade, and an anxiety-inducing one at that. Think of the name collisions! While it has some significant drawbacks, it also correctly acknowledges that defining custom semantics without prior agreement between all parties is a fiction. A flexible format --- not an infinity of namespaces with URLs pointing to nothing --- is how you do "software design on the scale of decades".

Let's be real, after all --- out of all the sites using "Open Graph" tags, how many use the appropriate `prefix` attribute? How many of their developers even know the `prefix` attribute exists?

## 3.2. Writing quality HTML

## 3.3. Extending HTML

### Data attributes

### Microformats

<https://microformats.org/>

### Custom elements?

`<a id="_footnotedef_1"></a>[<a anchor="_footnoteref_1">1</a>] <a href="https://almanac.httparchive.org/en/2020/markup" class="bare">https://almanac.httparchive.org/en/2020/markup</a>.` Other than `<code>&lt;div&gt;</code>` being the most common element, the HTTP Archive `<cite>Web Almanac</cite>` found that 0.06% of pages surveyed in 2020 contained the nonexistent `<code>&lt;h7&gt;</code>` element. 0.0015% for `<code>&lt;h8&gt;</code>`.

[2] <https://adrianroselli.com/2022/11/accessibility-gaps-in-mvps.html>

# Chapter 4. Building A Simple Web 1.0 Application With Flask

This chapter covers

- Picking a "web stack" to build our sample hypermedia application in
- A brief introduction to Flask & Jinja2 for Server Side Rendering (SSR)
- An overview of the functionality of our sample hypermedia application, Contact.App
- Implementing the basic CRUD (Create, Read, Update, Delete) operations and search for Contact.App

To begin our journey into Hypermedia Driven Applications, we are going to create a simple contact management web application called Contacts.app. We will start with a basic, "Web 1.0-style" multi-page application, in the grand CRUD (Create, Read, Update, Delete) tradition. It will not be the best contact management application, but that's OK because it will be simple (a great virtue of web 1.0 applications!) It will also be easy to incrementally improve the application by taking advantage of hypermedia-oriented technologies like htmx.

By the time we are finished building the application, over the coming chapters, it will have some very slick features that most developers today would assume requires the use of sophisticated client-side infrastructure. We will, instead, implement these features entirely using the hypermedia approach, but enhanced with htmx and other libraries that stay within that paradigm.

## 4.1. Picking A "Web Stack" To Use

In order to demonstrate how a hypermedia application works, we need to pick a server-side language and library for handling HTTP requests. Colloquially, this is called our "Server Side" or "Web" stack, and there are literally hundreds of options to choose from, all with passionate followers. You probably have a web framework that you prefer and, while I wish we could write this book for every possible stack out there, in the interest of brevity we can only pick one.

For this book we are going to use the following stack:

- We will use Python as our programming language (<https://www.python.org/>)
- We will use Flask as our web framework, allowing us to connect HTTP requests to python logic (<https://palletsprojects.com/p/flask/>)
- We will use Jinja2 for our server-side templating language, allowing us to render HTML responses using a familiar and intuitive syntax (<https://palletsprojects.com/p/jinja/>)

Why pick this particular stack? I am not a day-to-day Python programmer, so it's not an obvious choice for me! But this particular stack has a number of advantages.

First off, python is the most popular programming language as of this writing, according to the TIOBE index (<https://www.tiobe.com/tiobe-index/>), a popular measure of programming language popularity. More importantly, even if you don't know or like Python, it is very easy to read. As a veteran of the programming language wars of the 90's and early aughts, I understand how

passionate people are around programming languages, and I hope python is a "least worst" choice for readers who are not pythonistas.

I picked flask as the web framework because it is very lightweight and does not impose a lot of structure on top of the basics of HTTP routing. This bare-bones approach isn't for everyone: in the python community, for example, many people prefer the "Batteries Included" nature of Django, where lots of functionality is available out of the box.

I understand that perspective, but, for teaching purposes, I feel that an un-opinionated and light-weight library will make it easier for non-Python developers to follow along by minimizing the amount of code required on the server side. Anyone who prefers django or some other Python web framework, or some other language entirely for that matter, should be able to easily convert the Flask examples into their native framework.

Jinja2 templates were picked because they are the default templating language for Flask. They are simple enough and standard enough that most people who understand any server side (or client side) templating library will be able to understand them reasonably quickly and easily.

With Jinja2, we will be rendering our HTML *on the server side*. This is the traditional approach to building web applications, but, with the rise of SPAs, is not as widely known a technique as it once was. Today, as people are rediscovering this approach to building web applications, the term "Server Side Rendering" or SSR is emerging as the way that people talk about this style of templating, in contrast with "Client Side Rendering", that is, rendering templates in the browser, as is common in SPA libraries.

In general, in Contact.app, we will intentionally keep things as simple as possible (sometimes sacrificing other design principles to do so!) to maximize the teaching value of our code: it won't be perfectly factored code, and it certainly won't be the most beautiful web application, but it will be easy enough to follow for readers, and easy to translate into your preferred language and web stack.

## 4.2. Python

Since this book is intended to teach how hypermedia can be used effectively, we aren't going to do deep dives into the various technologies we use *around* that hypermedia. This has some obvious drawbacks: if you aren't comfortable with python, for example, some of the example python code in the book may seem confusing or mysterious.

If you feel like you need a quick introduction to the language, we heartily recommend "The Quick Python Book" by Manning Publishing. It gives you a clear and brisk introduction to the language, and will put you in a good position to understand the relatively simple python code used in this book.

That being said, I think most web developers, even developers who are unfamiliar with python, should be able to follow along in the code. Remember, I hadn't written very much python before writing this book, and I got the hang of it pretty quick!

## 4.3. Introducing Flask: Our First Route

Flask is a very simple but flexible web framework for Python. Just like this book isn't a Python book, it isn't a Flask book either, so we will not go into too much detail about it. However, unlike Python, which is similar in many ways to other programming languages, Flask might be a bit different than the web frameworks you are familiar with, so it is necessary to do a bit more of an introduction to prepare you for the coming chapters. Thankfully, Flask is simple enough that most web developers shouldn't have a problem following along. Let's go over the basics.

A Flask application consists of a series of *routes* tied to functions that execute when an HTTP request to a given path is made. I will use the term "handler" to refer to the functions associated with a route.

Let's look at the first "route" definition in our application. It will be a simple redirect, such that when a user goes to the root of our web application, `/`, they will be redirected to the `/contacts` path instead. Redirection is an HTTP feature where, when a user requests one URL, they are sent to another one, and is a basic piece of web functionality that is well supported in most web frameworks.

Let's create our first route definition, a simple "Hello World" route. In the following python code you will see the `@app` symbol. This refers to the flask application object. Don't worry too much about how it has been set up, just understand that it is an object that encapsulates the mapping of requests to some *path* to a python function (i.e. handler) to be executed by the server when a request to that path is made.

Here is the code:

### *A Simple "Hello World" Route*

```
@app.route("/") ❶
def index(): ❷
    return "Hello World!" ❸
```

❶ Establishes we are mapping the `/` path as a route

❷ The next method is the handler for that route

❸ Returns the string "Hello World!" to the client

The Flask pattern for doing this is to use the `route()` method on the Flask application object, and pass in the path you wish the route to handle. In this case we pass in the root or `/` path, as a string, to the `@app.route()` method. This establishes a path that Flask will handle.

This route declaration is then followed by a simple function definition, `index()`. In flask, the function immediately following a route definition is the "handler" for that route, and will be executed when an HTTP request to the given path is made. (Note that the name of the function doesn't matter, we can call it whatever we'd like. In this case I chose `index()` because that fits with the route we are handling: the root "index" of the web applications.) So we have the `index()` function immediately following our route definition for the root, and this will become the handler for the root URL in our web application.



The handler in this case is dead simple, it just returns a string, "Hello World!", to the client. This isn't even hypermedia yet, but, nonetheless, the browser renders it fine:

[figure 2 1 hello world] | *figure\_2-1\_hello\_world.png*

*Figure 3. Hello Flask!*

For Contact.app, rather than rendering "Hello World!" at the root path, we are going to do something a little fancy: we are going to redirect to another path, the `/contacts` path. Redirects are a feature of HTTP that allow you to, well, redirect a client to another location in an HTTP response. Redirecting to the `/contacts` path is a bit more consistent with notion of resources with REST. It's a judgement call on our part, but we are going to go with it.

To change our "Hello World" route to a redirect, we only need to change one line of code:

*Changing "Hello World" to a Redirect*

```
@app.route("/")
def index():
    return redirect("/contacts") ①
```

① Update to a call to `redirect()`

Now the `index()` function simply returns the result of calling a `redirect()` function with the path we wish to redirect to, in this case `/contacts`, passed in as a string. This simple handler implementation will trigger an HTTP Redirect to that path, achieving what we desire for this route.

So, in summary, given the functionality above, when someone navigates to the root directory of our web application, Flask will redirect them to the `/contacts` path. Pretty simple, and I hope nothing too surprising for you, regardless of what web framework or language you are used to!

## 4.4. Contact.App Functionality

OK, with that brief introduction to Flask out of the way, let's get down to specifying and implementing our application. What will Contact.app do?

Initially, it will provide the following functionality:

- Provide a list of contacts, including first name, last name, phone and email address
- Provide the ability to search the list of contacts
- Provide the ability to add a new contact to the list
- Provide the ability to view the details of a contact on the list
- Provide the ability to edit the details of a contact on the list
- Provide the ability to delete a contact from the list

So, as you can see, this is a pretty basic CRUD application, the sort of thing that is perfect for an old-school web 1.0 application. The source code of the application is available at <https://github.com/bigskysoftware/contact-app>.

## Showing A Searchable List Of Contacts

Let's look at our first "real" bit of functionality: the ability show all the contacts in our system in a list (really, in a table).

This functionality is going to be found at the `/contacts` path, which is the path our previous route is redirecting to.

We will use the `@app` flask instance to route the `/contacts` path and then define a handler function, `contacts()`. This function is going to do one of two things:

- If there is a search term, it filter all contacts matching that term
- If not, it will simply return all contacts in our database.

Here is the code:

### Server Side Search

```
@app.route("/contacts")
def contacts():
    search = request.args.get("q") ①
    if search is not None:
        contacts_set = Contact.search(search) ②
    else:
        contacts_set = Contact.all() ③
    return render_template("index.html", contacts=contacts_set) ④
```

- ① Look for the query parameter named `q`, which stands for "query"
- ② If the parameter exists, call the `Contact.search()` function with it
- ③ If not, call the `Contact.all()` function
- ④ pass the result to the `index.html` template to render to the client

We see the usual routing code we saw in our first example, but then we see some more elaborate code in the handler function. First, we check to see if a search query parameter named `q` is part of the request. The "query string" is part of the URL specification and you are probably familiar with it. Here is an example URL with a query string in it: <https://example.com/contacts?q=joe>. The query string is everything after the `?` and is a name-value pair format. In this case, the query parameter `q` is set to the string value `joe`.

To get back to the code, if a query parameter is found, we call out to the `search()` method on the `Contact` model to do the actual search and return all matching contacts. If the query parameter is *not* found, we simply get all contacts by invoking the `all()` method on the `Contact` object.

Finally, we then render a template, `index.html` that displays the given contacts, passing in the results of whichever function we ended up calling.

Note that we are not going to dig into the code in the `Contact` class. The implementation of the `Contact` class is not relevant to hypermedia, we will ask you to simply accept that it is a "normal" domain model class, and the methods on it act in the "normal" manner. We will treat `Contact` as a

*resource* and will provide hypermedia representations of that resource to clients, in the form of HTML generated via server side templates.

## The List & Search Template

Now we need to take a look at the template that we are going to render in our response to the client. In this HTML response we want to have a few things:

- A list of any matching or all contacts
- A search box that a user may type a value into and submit for searches
- A bit of surrounding "chrome": a header and footer for the website that will be the same regardless of the page you are on

Recall we are using the Jinja2 templating language here. In Jinja2 templates, we use `{{ }}` to embed expression values and we use `{% %}` for directives, like iteration or including other content. Jinja2 is very similar to other templating languages, and I hope you are able to follow along easily.

Let's look at the first few lines of code in our `index.html` template:

*Start of index.html*

```
{% extends 'layout.html' %} ①

{% block content %} ②

    <form action="/contacts" method="get" class="tool-bar"> ③
        <label for="search">Search Term</label>
        <input id="search" type="search" name="q" value="{{ request.args.get('q')
or ' ' }}" /> ④
        <input type="submit" value="Search" />
    </form>
```

- ① Set the layout template for this template
- ② Delimit the content to be inserted into the layout
- ③ Create a search form that will issue an HTTP `GET` to `/contacts`
- ④ Create an input that a query can be typed into to search contacts

The first line of code references a base template, `layout.html`, with the `extends` directive. This layout template provides the layout for the page (again, sometimes called "the chrome"): it wraps the template content in an `<html>` tag, imports any necessary CSS and JavaScript in a `<head>` element, places a `<body>` tag around the main content and so forth. All the common content that wrapped around the "normal" content is located in this file.

The next line of code declares the `content` section of this template, which is the content that will be included within the "chrome" of the layout template.

Next we have our first bit of actual HTML, rather than just Jinja directives. We have a simple HTML form that allows you to search contacts by issuing a `GET` request to the `/contacts` path. The form

itself contains a label and an input with the name "q". This input's value will be submitted with the GET request to the `/contacts` path.

Note that the value of this input is set to the Jinja expression `{{ request.args.get('q') or '' }}`. This expression is evaluated by Jinja and will insert the request value of "q" as the input's value, if it exists. This will "preserve" the search value when a user does a search, so the text box contains the value that they typed in initially, and makes for a slightly nicer user experience.

Finally, we have a submit-type input, which, when clicked on, will trigger the form to issue an HTTP request.

This search UI forms the top of our contact page, and it is followed a table of all the contacts that are stored on the server. (Or, if there is a search term, the contacts that match that search term. More on that in a bit.)

Here is what the template code looks like:

#### *The Contacts Table*

```
<table>
  <thead>
    <tr>
      <th>First</th> <th>Last</th> <th>Phone</th> <th>Email</th> <th></th>①
    </tr>
  </thead>
  <tbody>
    {% for contact in contacts %} ②
      <tr>
        <td>{{ contact.first }}</td>
        <td>{{ contact.last }}</td>
        <td>{{ contact.phone }}</td>
        <td>{{ contact.email }}</td> ③
        <td><a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/edit">Edit</a>
          <a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}">View</a></td> ④
      </tr>
    {% endfor %}
  </tbody>
</table>
```

- ① Output some headers for our table
- ② Iterate over the contacts that were passed in to the template
- ③ Output the values of the current contact, first name, last name, etc.
- ④ An "operations" column, with links to edit or view the contact details

Here we are into the core of the page: we construct a table with appropriate headers matching the data we are going to show for each contact. We iterate over the contacts that were passed into the template by the handler method using the `for` loop directive in Jinja2. We then construct a series of rows, one for each contact, where we render the first and last name, phone and email of the contact as table cells in the row.

Finally, we have an additional cell that includes two links:

- A link to the "Edit" page for the contact, located at `/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/edit` (e.g. For the contact with id 42, the edit link will point to `/contacts/42/edit`)
- A link to the "View" page for the contact `/contacts/{{ contact.id }}` (using our previous contact example, the show page would be at `/contacts/42`)

Finally, we have a bit of end-matter: a link to add a new contact and a directive to close up the `content` block:

#### The Add Contact Link

```
<p>
  <a href="/contacts/new">Add Contact</a> ❶
</p>

{% endblock %} ❷
```

❶ Link to the page that allows you to create a new contact

❷ The closing element of the `content` block

And that's our template! Using this server side template, in combination with our handler method, we can respond with an HTML *representation* of all the contacts requested. So far, so hypermedia!

Here is what the template looks like, rendered with a bit of contact data:

[figure 2 2 table etc] | *figure\_2-2\_table\_etc.png*

Figure 4. *Contact.App*

It won't win any design awards at this point, but notice that our template, when rendered, provides all the functionality necessary to see all the contacts and search them, and also provides links to edit them, view details of them or even create a new one. And it does all this without the browser knowing a thing about Contacts! The browser just knows how to issue HTTP requests and render HTML.

As simple as it is, this is a very REST-ful application!

## Adding A New Contact

The next bit of functionality that we will add to our application is the ability to add new contacts. To do so, we are going to need to handle that `/contacts/new` URL referenced in the "Add Contact" link above. Note that when a user clicks on that link, the browser will issue a `GET` request to the `/contacts/new` URL. The other routes we have been looking at were using `GET` as well, but we are actually going to use two different HTTP methods for this bit of functionality: an HTTP `GET` and an HTTP `POST`, so we are going to be explicit when we declare this route.

Here is our code:

```
@app.route("/contacts/new", methods=['GET']) ❶
def contacts_new_get():
    return render_template("new.html", contact=Contact()) ❷
```

❶ Declare a route, explicitly handling **GET** requests to this path

❷ Render the **new.html** template, passing in a new contact object

Pretty simple! We just render a **new.html** template with, well, a new **Contact**, as you might expect! (Note that **Contact()** is the python syntax for creating a new instance of the **Contact** class.)

So the handler code for this route is very simple. The **new.html** Jinja2 template, in fact, is more complex. For the remaining templates I am not going to include the starting layout directive or the content block declaration, but you can assume they are the same unless I say otherwise. This will let us focus on the "meat" of the template.

If you are familiar with HTML you are probably expecting a form element here, and you will not be disappointed. We are going to use the standard form element for collecting contact information and submitting it to the server.

Here is what our HTML looks like:

#### A New Contact Form

```
<form action="/contacts/new" method="post"> ❶
  <fieldset>
    <legend>Contact Values</legend>
    <p>
      <label for="email">Email</label> ❷
      <input name="email" id="email" type="email" placeholder="Email" value="{{
contact.email or '' }}"> ❸
      <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['email'] }}</span> ❹
    </p>
```

❶ A form that submits to the **/contacts/new** path, using an HTTP **POST**

❷ A label for the first form input

❸ the first form input, of type email

❹ Any error messages associated with this field

In the first line of code we create a form that will submit back *to the same path* that we are handling: **/contacts/new**. Rather than issuing an HTTP **GET** to this path, however, we will issue an HTTP **POST** to it. This is the standard way of signalling via HTTP that you wish to create a new resource, rather than simply get a representation of it.

We then have a label and input (always a good practice) that capture the email of the new contact in question. The "name" of the input is "email" and, when this form is submitted, the value of this input will be submitted in the **POST** request, associated with the "email" key.

Next we have inputs for the other fields for contacts:

#### *Inputs And Labels For The New Contact Form*

```
<p>
  <label for="first_name">First Name</label>
  <input name="first_name" id="first_name" type="text" placeholder="First
Name" value="{{ contact.first or '' }}">
  <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['first'] }}</span>
</p>
<p>
  <label for="last_name">Last Name</label>
  <input name="last_name" id="last_name" type="text" placeholder="Last Name"
value="{{ contact.last or '' }}">
  <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['last'] }}</span>
</p>
<p>
  <label for="phone">Phone</label>
  <input name="phone" id="phone" type="text" placeholder="Phone" value="{{
contact.phone or '' }}">
  <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['phone'] }}</span>
</p>
```

Finally, we have a button that will submit the form, the end of the form tag, and a link back to the main contacts table:

#### *The Submit Button For The New Contact Form*

```
<button>Save</button>
</fieldset>
</form>

<p>
  <a href="/contacts">Back</a>
</p>
```

It is worth pointing out something that is easy to miss: here we are again seeing the flexibility of hypermedia! If we add a new field, remove a field, or change the logic around how fields are validated or work with one another, this new state of affairs is simply reflected in the hypermedia representation given to users. A user will see the updated new content and be able to work with it, no software update required!

### **Handling The Post to `/contacts/new`**

The next step in our application is to handle the **POST** that this form makes to `/contacts/new` to create a new Contact.

To do so, we need to add another route that uses the same path but handles the **POST** method instead of the **GET**. We will take the submitted form values and attempt to create a Contact. If it works, we will redirect to the list of contacts and show a success message. If it doesn't then we will show the

new contact form again, rendering any errors that occurred in the HTML so the user can correct them.

Here is our controller code:

#### *The New Contact Controller Code*

```
@app.route("/contacts/new", methods=['POST'])
def contacts_new():
    c = Contact(None, request.form['first_name'], request.form['last_name'],
request.form['phone'],
request.form['email']) ①
    if c.save(): ②
        flash("Created New Contact!")
        return redirect("/contacts") ③
    else:
        return render_template("new.html", contact=c) ④
```

① We construct a new contact object with the values from the form

② We try to save it

③ On success, "flash" a success message & redirect to the `/contacts` page

④ On failure, rerender the form, showing any errors to the user

The logic here is a bit more complex than other handler methods we have seen, but not by a whole lot. The first thing we do is create a new Contact, again using the `Contact()` syntax in python to construct the object. We pass in the values submitted by the user in the form by using the `request.form` object, provided by flask Flask. This object allows us to access form values in a convenient and easy to read syntax. Note that we pick out each value based on the `name` associated with each input in the form.

We also pass in `None` as the first value to the `Contact` constructor. This is the "id" parameter, and by passing in `None` we are signaling that it is a new contact, and needs to have an ID generated for it.

Next, we call the `save()` method on the Contact object. This returns `true` if the save is successful, and `false` if the save is unsuccessful, for example if one of the fields has a bad value in it. (Again, we are not going to dig into the details of how this model object is implemented, our only concern is using it to generate hypermedia responses.)

If we are able to save the contact (that is, there were no validation errors), we create a *flash* message indicating success and redirect the browser back to the list page. A flash is a common feature in web frameworks that allows you to store a message that will be available on the *next* request, typically in a cookie or in a session store.

Finally, if we are unable to save the contact, we rerender the `new.html` template with the contact. This will show the same template as above, but the inputs will be filled in with the submitted values, and any errors associated with the fields will be rendered to feedback to the user as to what validation failed.

Note that, in the case of a successful creation of a contact, we have implemented the



Post/Redirect/Get pattern we discussed earlier.

Believe it or not, this is about as complicated as our handler logic will get, even when we look at adding more advanced htmx-based behavior. Simplicity is a great selling point of the hypermedia approach!

## Viewing The Details Of A Contact

The next piece of functionality we will implement is the details page for a Contact. The user will navigate to this page by clicking the "View" link in one of the rows in the list of contacts. This will take them to the path `/contact/<contact id>` (e.g. `/contacts/42`). Note that this is a common pattern in web development: Contacts are being treated as resources and the URLs around these resources are organized in a coherent manner:

- If you wish to view all contacts, you issue a `GET` to `/contacts`
- If you wish to get a hypermedia representation allowing you to create a new contact, you issue a `GET` to `/contacts/new`
- If you wish to view a specific contacts (with, say, and id of `42`), you issue a `GET` to `/contacts/42`

### Path Design In Your HDA

It is easy to quibble about what particular path scheme you should use ("Should we `POST` to `/contacts/new` or to `/contacts?`") and we have seen *lots* of arguments about one approach versus another. I feel it is more important to understand the overarching idea of resources and the hypermedia representations of them, rather than hairsplitting about path layouts: just pick a reasonable schema you like and stay consistent.

Our handler logic for this route is going to be very simple: we just look the Contact up by id, embedded in the path of the URL for the route. To extract this ID we are going to need to introduce a final bit of Flask functionality: the ability to call out pieces of a path and have them automatically extracted and then passed in to a handler function.

Here is what the code looks like, just a few lines of simple Python:

```
@app.route("/contacts/<contact_id>") ①
def contacts_view(contact_id=0): ②
    contact = Contact.find(contact_id) ③
    return render_template("show.html", contact=contact) ④
```

- ① Map the path, with a path variable named `contact_id`
- ② The handler takes the value of this path parameters
- ③ Look up the corresponding contact
- ④ Render the `show.html` template

You can see the syntax for extracting values from the path in the first line of code, you enclose the part of the path you wish to extract in `<>` and give it a name. This component of the path will be

extracted and then passed into the handler function, via the parameter with the same name. So, if you were to navigate to the path `/contacts/42` then the value `42` would be passed into the `contacts_view()` function for the value of `contact_id`.

Once we have the id of the contact we want to look up, we load it up using the `find` method on the `Contact` object. We then pass this contact into the `show.html` template and render a response.

## Viewing The Details Of A Contact

Our `show.html` template is relatively simple, just showing the same information as the table but in a slightly different format (perhaps for printing.) If we add functionality like "notes" to the application later on, however, this will give us a good place to show them.

Again, I will omit the "chrome" and focus on the meat of the template:

*The Contact Details Template*

```
<h1>{{contact.first}} {{contact.last}}</h1>

<div>
  <div>Phone: {{contact.phone}}</div>
  <div>Email: {{contact.email}}</div>
</div>

<p>
<a href="/contacts/{{contact.id}}/edit">Edit</a>
<a href="/contacts">Back</a>
</p>
```

We simply render a nice First Name and Last Name header with the additional contact information as well as a link to edit it or to navigate back to the list of contacts. Simple but effective hypermedia!

## Editing And Deleting A Contact

Editing a contact is going to look very similar to creating a new contact. As with adding a new contact, we are going to need two routes that handle the same path, but using different HTTP methods: a `GET` to `/contacts/<contact_id>/edit` will return a form allowing you to edit the contact with that ID and the `POST` will update it.

We will also piggyback the ability to delete a contact along with this editing functionality. To do this we will need to handle a `POST` to `/contacts/<contact_id>/delete`.

Let's look at the code to handle the `GET`, which, again, will return an HTML representation of an editing interface for the given resource:

```
@app.route("/contacts/<contact_id>/edit", methods=["GET"])
def contacts_edit_get(contact_id=0):
    contact = Contact.find(contact_id)
    return render_template("edit.html", contact=contact)
```

As you can see this looks an awful lot like our "Show Contact" functionality. In fact, it is nearly identical except for the template that we render: here we render `edit.html` rather than `show.html`! There's that simplicity we talked about again!

While our handler code looked similar to the "Show Contact" functionality, our template is going to look very similar to the template for the "New Contact" functionality: we are going to have a form that submits values to the same URL used to `GET` the form (see what I did there?) and that presents all the fields of a contact as inputs, along with any error messages (we will even reuse the same Post-Redirect-Get trick!)

Here is the first bit of the form:

#### The Edit Contact Form Start

```
<form action="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/edit" method="post"> ❶
  <fieldset>
    <legend>Contact Values</legend>
    <p>
      <label for="email">Email</label>
      <input name="email" id="email" type="text" placeholder="Email"
value="{{ contact.email }}"> ❷
      <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['email'] }}</span>
    </p>
```

❶ Issue a `POST` to the `/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/edit` path

❷ As with the `new.html` page, the input is tied to the contact's email

This HTML is nearly identical to our `new.html` form, except that this form is going to submit a `POST` to a different path, based on the id of the contact that we want to update. It's worth noting here that, rather than `POST`, I would prefer to use a `PUT` or `PATCH`, but those are not available in plain HTML.

Following this we have the remainder of our form, again very similar to the `new.html` template, and our submit button to submit the form.

### The Edit Contact Form Body

```
<p>
  <label for="first_name">First Name</label>
  <input name="first_name" id="first_name" type="text"
placeholder="First Name"
      value="{{ contact.first }}">
  <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['first'] }}</span>
</p>
<p>
  <label for="last_name">Last Name</label>
  <input name="last_name" id="last_name" type="text" placeholder="Last
Name"
      value="{{ contact.last }}">
  <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['last'] }}</span>
</p>
<p>
  <label for="phone">Phone</label>
  <input name="phone" id="phone" type="text" placeholder="Phone"
value="{{ contact.phone }}">
  <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['phone'] }}</span>
</p>
<button>Save</button>
</fieldset>
</form>
```

In the final part of our template we have a small difference between the `new.html` and `edit.html`. Below the main editing form, we include a second form that allows you to delete a contact. It does this by issuing a `POST` to the `/contacts/<contact id>/delete` path. As with being able to use a `PUT` to update a contact, it sure would be nice if we could issue a `DELETE` request to delete one, but unfortunately that also isn't possible in plain HTML!

Finally, there is a simple hyperlink back to the list of contacts.

### The Edit Contact Form Footer

```
<form action="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/delete" method="post">
  <button>Delete Contact</button>
</form>

<p>
  <a href="/contacts/">Back</a>
</p>
```

Given all the similarities between the `new.html` and `edit.html` templates, you may be wondering why we are not *refactoring* these two templates to share logic between them. That's a great observation and, in a production system, we would probably do just that. For our purposes, however, since our application is small and simple, we will leave the templates separate.

## Factoring Your Applications

One thing that often trips people up who are coming to hypermedia applications from a JavaScript background is the notion of "components". In JavaScript-oriented applications it is common to break your app up into small client-side components that are then composed together. These components are often developed and tested in isolation and provide a nice abstraction for developers to create testable code.

With Hypermedia Driven Applications, in contrast, you factor your application on the server side. As we said, the above form could be refactored into a shared template between the edit and create templates, allowing you to achieve a reusable and DRY (Don't Repeat Yourself) implementation.

Note that factoring on the server side tends to be coarser-grained than on the client side: you tend to split out common *sections* rather than create lots of individual components. This has both benefits (it tends to be simple) as well as drawbacks (it is not nearly as isolated as client-side components).

Overall, however, a properly factored server-side hypermedia application can be extremely DRY!

### Handling The Post to `/contacts/<contact_id>`

Next we need to handle the HTTP `POST` request that the form in our `edit.html` template submits. We will declare another route that handles the path as the `GET` above.

Here is our Python code:

```
@app.route("/contacts/<contact_id>/edit", methods=["POST"]) ❶
def contacts_edit_post(contact_id=0):
    c = Contact.find(contact_id) ❷
    c.update(request.form['first_name'], request.form['last_name'],
request.form['phone'], request.form['email']) ❸
    if c.save(): ❹
        flash("Updated Contact!")
        return redirect("/contacts/" + str(contact_id)) ❺
    else:
        return render_template("edit.html", contact=c) ❻
```

- ❶ Handle a `POST` to `/contacts/<contact_id>/edit`
- ❷ Look the contact up by id
- ❸ update the contact with the new information from the form
- ❹ Attempt to save it
- ❺ On success, flash a success message & redirect to the detail page
- ❻ On failure, rerender the edit template, showing any errors

The logic in this handler is very similar to the logic in the handler for adding a new contact. The only real difference is that, rather than creating a new Contact, we look up a contact by id and then call the `update()` method on it with the values that were entered in the form.

Once again, this consistency between our CRUD operations is one of the nice, simplifying aspects of traditional CRUD web applications!

## Deleting A Contact

We piggybacked delete functionality into the same template used to edit a contact. That form will issue an HTTP `POST` to `/contacts/<contact_id>/delete` that we will need to handle and delete the contact in question.

Here is what the controller looks like

*The Delete Contact Controller Code*

```
@app.route("/contacts/<contact_id>/delete", methods=["POST"]) ❶
def contacts_delete(contact_id=0):
    contact = Contact.find(contact_id)
    contact.delete() ❷
    flash("Deleted Contact!")
    return redirect("/contacts") ❸
```

- ❶ Handle a `POST` the `/contacts/<contact_id>/delete` path
- ❷ Look up and then invoke the `delete()` method on the contact
- ❸ Flash a success message and redirect to the main list of contacts

The handler code is very simple since we don't need to do any validation or conditional logic: we simply look up the contact the same way we have been doing in our other handlers and invoke the `delete()` method on it, then redirect back to the list of contacts with a success flash message.

No need for a template in this case!

## Contact.App... Implemented!

Believe it or not, that's our entire contact application! Hopefully the Flask and Jinja2 code is simple enough that you were able to follow along easily, even if Python isn't your preferred language or Flask isn't your preferred web application framework. Again, I don't expect you to be a Python or Flask expert (I'm certainly not!) and you shouldn't need more than a basic understanding of how they work for the remainder of the book.

Now, admittedly, this isn't a large or sophisticated application, but it does demonstrate many of the aspects of traditional, web 1.0 applications: CRUD, the Post/Redirect/Get pattern, working with domain logic in a controller, organizing our URLs in a coherent, resource-oriented manner.

And, furthermore, this is a deeply *hypermedia-based* web application. Without even thinking about it (or maybe even understanding it!) we have been using REST, HATEOAS and all the other hypermedia concepts. I would bet that this simple little app we have built is more REST-ful than

99% of all JSON APIs ever built, and it was all effortless: just by virtue of using a *hypermedia*, HTML, we naturally fall into the REST-ful network architecture.

So that's great. But what's the matter with this little web app? Why not end here and go off to develop the old web 1.0 style applications people used to build?

Well, at some level, nothing is wrong with it. Particularly for an application that is as simple as this one it, the older way of building web apps may be a fine approach!

However, the application does suffer from that "clunkiness" that we mentioned earlier when discussing web 1.0 applications: every request replaces the entire screen, introducing a noticeable flicker when navigating between pages. You lose your scroll state. You have to click around a bit more than you might in a more sophisticated web application. Contact.App, at this point, just doesn't feel like a "modern" web application, does it?

Well. Are we going to have to adopt JavaScript after all? Should we pitch this hypermedia approach in the bin, install NPM and start pulling down thousands of JavaScript dependencies, and rebuild the application using a "modern" JavaScript library like React?

Well, I wouldn't be writing this book if that were the case, now would I?!

No, I wouldn't. It turns out that we can improve the user experience of this application *without* abandoning the hypermedia architecture. One way this can be accomplished is to introduce htmx, a small JavaScript library that eXtends HTML (hence, htmx), to our application. In the next few chapters we will take a look at this library and how it can be used to build surprisingly interactive user experiences, all within the original hypermedia architecture of the web.

## 4.5. Summary

- A Hypermedia Driven Application is an application that primarily relies on exchanging hypermedia with a server for achieving interactivity
- Remember that Web 1.0 applications are, by definition, Hypermedia Driven Applications!
- Flask is a simple Python library for connecting routes to server-side logic, or handlers, and provides a good foundation for building simple Hypermedia Driven Applications
- Jinja2 is the default templating library used for Server Side Rendering in Flask, it is a fairly standard templating library
- Combining Flask and Jinja templates allowed us to implement a basic CRUD-style Web 1.0 application for managing contacts in a basic web 1.0-style application with relatively little effort
- This web 1.0-style application works fine, but it feels a bit clunky and old fashioned. We'll look into how to fix that problem, while still using hypermedia, next!

# Hypermedia-Driven Web Applications With htmx



# Chapter 5. Extending HTML As Hypermedia

This chapter covers

- Some shortcomings of "plain" HTML
- How htmx addresses these opportunities to improve the expressiveness of HTML
- How to issue various HTTP requests with htmx
- History and back button support in htmx

In the previous chapter we introduced a simple Web 1.0-style hypermedia application to manage contacts. This application supported the normal CRUD operations for contacts, as well as a simple mechanism for searching contacts. Our application was built using nothing but forms and anchor tags, the traditional tags used to interact with servers, and it exchanges hypermedia (HTML) with the server over HTTP, issuing **GET** and **POST** HTTP requests and receiving back full HTML documents in response. It is pretty simple, but it is also definitely a Hypermedia Driven Application.

Our application is robust, leverages the web's strengths and is simple to understand. So what's not to like? Well, unfortunately, our application isn't completely satisfying from either a user experience perspective, or from a technical perspective. It suffers from problems typical of this style of Web 1.0 applications.

Two obvious problems that jump out are:

- From a user experience perspective: there is a noticeable refresh when you move between pages of the application, of when you create, update or delete a contact. This is because every user interaction (link click or form submission) requires a full page refresh, with a whole new HTML document to process after each action.
- From a technical perspective, all the updates are done with the **POST** HTTP action. This is despite the fact that more logical actions HTTP request types like **PUT** and **DELETE** exist and would make far more sense for some operations. After all, if we wanted to delete a resource, wouldn't it make more sense to use an HTTP **DELETE** request to do so? Somewhat ironically, since we are using pure HTML, we are unable to access the full expressive power of HTTP, which was designed specifically *for* HTML!

The first point, in particular, is noticeable in Web 1.0 style applications like ours and is what is responsible for giving them the reputation for being "clunky" when compared with their more sophisticated JavaScript-based Single Page Application cousins.

Single Page Applications eliminate this clunkiness by updating a web page directly, by mutating the Document Object Model (DOM). The DOM is the internal model that a browser builds up when it processes HTML, forming a tree of "nodes" for the tags and other content in the HTML. The DOM provides a programmatic JavaScript API that allows you to update the nodes in a page directly, without the use of hypermedia. Using this API, JavaScript code can insert new content, or remove or update existing content, entirely outside the normal browser request mechanism.

There are a few of different styles of SPA, but, as we discussed in Chapter 1, the most common approach today is to tie the DOM to a JavaScript model and then let an SPA framework like react

(<https://reactjs.org/>) or vue (<https://vuejs.org/>) *reactively* update the DOM when the JavaScript model is updated: you make a change to a JavaScript object and the web page magically updates its state to reflect the change in the model.

Recall that in this style of application communication with the server is typically done via a JSON Data API, with the application sacrificing the advantages of hypermedia in order to provide a better, smoother user experience.

Many web developers today would not even consider the hypermedia approach due to the perceived "legacy" feel of these Web 1.0 style applications.

The second, technical point may strike you as a bit pedantic, and I am the first to admit that conversations around REST and which HTTP Action is right for a given operation can become very tedious. But, nonetheless, it has to be admitted that, when using plain HTML, it is impossible to use HTTP to its full power and, therefore, it is impossible to realize the full vision of the web as a RESTful system: a complete, stateless, resource-oriented distributed networking architecture that is flexible and resilient.

## A Close Look At A Hyperlink

As we have been saying, it turns out that you can actually get a lot of interactivity out of the hypermedia model, if you adopt a hypermedia-oriented library like htmx. To understand conceptually how htmx allows us to better address the UX concerns of Web 1.0 style applications, let's revisit the hyperlink/anchor tag from Chapter 1 and really drill in to each facet of it:

This simple anchor tag, when interpreted by a browser, creates a hyperlink to the Manning website:

### *A Simple Hyperlink, Again*

```
<a href="https://www.manning.com/">
  Manning Books
</a>
```

Breaking down exactly what this link will tell the browser to do, we have the following list:

- The browser will render the text "Manning Books" to the screen, likely with a decoration indicating it is clickable
- Then, when a user clicks on the text...
- The browser will issue an HTTP **GET** to <https://www.manning.com> and then...
- The browser will load the HTTP response into the browser window, replacing the current document

So we have four aspects of a simple hypermedia link like this, with the last three being the mechanic that distinguishes a hyperlink from "normal" text.

Let's take a moment and think about how we can generalize this fundamental hypermedia mechanic of HTML. There is no rule saying that hypermedia can *only* work this way, after all!

An initial observation is: why are anchor tags so special? Shouldn't other elements (besides forms) be able to issue HTTP requests as well? For example, shouldn't `button` elements be able to do so? It seemed silly to have to wrap a form tag around a button to make deleting contacts work in our application. Why should only anchor tags and forms be able to issue requests?

This presents our first opportunity to expand the expressiveness of HTML:

<b>IMPORTANT</b>	<i>Opportunity 1</i> HTML could be extended to allow <i>any</i> element to issue a request to the server
------------------	---

For our next observation, let's consider the event that triggers the request to the server on our link: a click. Well, what's so special about clicking (in the case of anchors) or submitting (in the case of forms)? Those are just two of many, many events that are fired by the DOM, after all. Events like mouse down, or key up, or blur are all events you might want to use to issue an HTTP request. Why shouldn't these other events be able to trigger requests as well?

This gives us our second opportunity to expand the expressiveness of HTML:

<b>IMPORTANT</b>	<i>Opportunity 2</i> HTML could be extended to allow <i>any</i> event, not just a click, as in the case of our hyperlinks, to trigger HTTP requests
------------------	--

Getting a bit more technical in our thinking leads us to the problem we noted earlier in the chapter: plain HTML only give us access to the `GET` and `POST` actions of HTTP? HTTP *stands* for HyperText Transfer Protocol, and yet the format it was explicitly designed for, HTML, only supports two of the five developer-facing request types! You *have* to use JavaScript and issue an AJAX request to get at the other three: `DELETE`, `PUT` and `PATCH`.

Let's recall what are all of these different HTTP request types designed to represent?

- `GET` corresponds with "getting" a representation for a resource from a URL: it is a pure read, with no mutation of the resource
- `POST` submits an entity (or data) to the given resource, often creating or mutating the resource and causing a state change
- `PUT` submits an entity (or data) to the given resource for update or replacement, again likely causing a state change
- `PATCH` is similar to `PUT` but implies a partial update and state change rather than a complete replacement of the entity
- `DELETE` deletes the given resource

These operations correspond closely to the CRUD operations we discussed in Chapter 2, and by only giving us access to two of them, HTML is presenting us with a severe and obvious technical limitation.

So here is our third opportunity to expand the expressiveness of HTML:

## IMPORTANT

### Opportunity 3

HTML could be extended so that it could access these missing three HTTP actions, **PUT**, **PATCH** and **DELETE**.

As a final observation, consider that last aspect of a hyperlink: it replaces the *entire* screen when a user clicks on it. It is this technical detail that makes for a poor user experience: it causes flashes of unstyled content, a loss of scroll state and so forth. But, again, there is no rule saying that hypermedia exchanges *must* replace the entire document.

This gives us our forth, final and perhaps most important opportunity to generalize HTML:

## IMPORTANT

### Opportunity 4

HTML could be extended to allow the responses to requests to replace elements *within* the current document, rather than requiring that they replace the *entire* document

This is actually a very old concept in hypermedia. Ted Nelson, in his 1980 book "Literary Machines" coined the term *transclusion* to capture this idea: the inclusion of content into an existing document via a hypermedia reference. If HTML supported this style of "dynamic transclusion", then Hypermedia Driven Applications could function much more like a Single Page Application, where only part of the DOM is updated by a given user interaction or network request.

If we were to take these four opportunities to generalize HTML, we would be extending HTML far beyond its normal capabilities, and we would be doing so *entirely within* the normal, hypermedia model of the web. We wouldn't be changing the fundamentals of the HTML and the HTTP requests that we use to build our application. Rather, these four generalizations of existing functionality already found within HTML would simply let us accomplish *more* using HTML.

## 5.2. Extending HTML as a Hypermedia with htmx

It turns out that there are some JavaScript libraries that extends HTML in exactly this manner. This may seem somewhat ironic, given that JavaScript-based SPAs have supplanted HTML-based hypermedia applications, that JavaScript would be used in this manner. But JavaScript is simply a language for extending browser functionality on the client side, and there is no rule saying it has to be used to write SPAs. In fact, JavaScript is the perfect tool for addressing shortcomings of HTML as a hypermedia: it has full access to the DOM and is nearly universally available!

One such library is htmx, which will be the focus of the next few chapters. htmx is not the only JavaScript library that takes this hypermedia-oriented approach, there are other excellent libraries like Unpoly (<https://unpoly.com>) and Hotwire (<https://hotwire.dev>). But htmx is perhaps the purest of these libraries in the pursuit of extending HTML as a hypermedia.

It focuses on the four opportunities for improving HTML that we discussed above and attempts to incrementally address each one, without introducing a significant amount of additional conceptual infrastructure for web developers beyond what is necessary to address those opportunities.

## Installing and Using htmx

From a practical, getting started perspective, htmx is a simple, dependency-free and stand-alone library that can be added to a web application by simply including it via a `script` tag in your `head` element

Because of this simple installation model, we can take advantage of tools like public CDNs to install the library. Below we are using the popular unpkg Content Delivery Network (CDN) to install version **1.7.0** of the library. We use an integrity hash to ensure that the delivered content matches what we expect. This SHA can be found on the htmx website. Finally, we mark the script as `crossorigin="anonymous"` so no credentials will be sent to the CDN.

### *Installing htmx*

```
<head>
  <script src="https://unpkg.com/htmx.org@1.7.0"
    integrity="sha384-
EzBXYpt0/T6gxNp0nuPtLkmRpmDBbjg6WmCUZRLXBBwYYmwAUxz1SGej0ARHX0Bo"
    crossorigin="anonymous"></script>

</head>
```

Believe it or not, that's all it takes to install htmx! If you are used to the extensive build systems in today's JavaScript world, this may seem impossible or insane, but this is in the spirit of the early web: you could simply include a script tag and things would just work. And it still feels like magic, even today!

Of course, you may not want to use a CDN, in which case you can download htmx to your local system and adjust the script tag to point to wherever you keep your static assets. Or, you may have one of those more sophisticated build system that automatically installs dependencies. In this case you can use the Node Package Manager (npm) name for the library: `htmx.org` and install it in the usual manner that your build system supports.

Once htmx has been installed, you can begin using it immediately.

And here we get to the funny part of htmx: unlike the vast majority of JavaScript libraries, htmx does not require you, the user, to actually write any JavaScript!

Instead, you will use *attributes* placed directly on elements in your HTML to drive more dynamic behavior. Remember: htmx is extending HTML as a hypermedia, and we want that extension to be as natural and consistent as possible with existing HTML concepts. Just as an anchor tag uses an `href` attribute to specify the URL to retrieve, and forms use an `action` attribute to specify the URL to submit the form to, htmx uses HTML *attributes* to specify the URL that an HTTP request should be issued to.

## 5.3. Triggering HTTP Requests

Let's look at the first feature of htmx: the ability for any element in a web page to issue HTTP requests. This is the core functionality of htmx, and it consists of five attributes that can be used to

issue the five different developer-facing types of HTTP requests:

- `hx-get` - issues an HTTP `GET` request
- `hx-post` - issues an HTTP `POST` request
- `hx-put` - issues an HTTP `PUT` request
- `hx-patch` - issues an HTTP `PATCH` request
- `hx-delete` - issues an HTTP `DELETE` request

Each of these attributes, when placed on an element, tell the htmx library: "When a user clicks (or whatever) this element, issue an HTTP request of the specified type"

The values of these attributes are similar to the values of both `href` on anchors and `action` on forms: you specify the URL you wish to issue the given HTTP request type to. Typically, this is done via a server-relative path.

So, for example, if we wanted a button to issue a `GET` request to `/contacts` then we would write:

#### *A Simple htmx-Powered Button*

```
<button hx-get="/contacts"> ❶  
  Get The Contacts  
</button>
```

❶ A simple button that issues an HTTP `GET` to `/contacts`

htmx will see the `hx-get` attribute on this button, and hook up some JavaScript logic to issue an HTTP `GET` AJAX request to the `/contacts` path when the user clicks on it. Very easy to understand and very consistent with the rest of HTML.

## **It's All Just HTML!**

Now we get to perhaps the most important thing to understand about htmx: it expects the response to this AJAX request *to be HTML*! htmx is an extension of HTML and, just as the response to an anchor tag click or form submission is usually expected to be HTML, htmx expects the server to respond with a hypermedia, namely with HTML.

This may come as a shock to web developers who are unused to responding to an AJAX request with anything other than JSON, which is far and away the most common response format for such requests. But AJAX requests are just HTTP requests and there is no rule saying they must be JSON! Recall again that AJAX stands for Asynchronous Javascript & XML, so JSON is already a step away from the format originally envisioned for this API: XML. htmx simply goes another direction and expects HTML.

## htmx vs. "plain" HTML responses

So, we have established that htmx expects HTML responses to the HTTP requests it makes. But there is an important difference between the HTTP responses to normal anchor and form driven requests and to htmx-powered requests like the one made by this button: in the case of htmx triggered requests, responses are often only *partial* bits of HTML.

In htmx-powered interactions we are typically not replacing the entire document. Rather we are using "transclusion" to include content *within* an existing document. Because of this, it is often not necessary or desirable to transfer an entire HTML document from the server to the browser. This fact can be used to save bandwidth as well as resource loading time, since less overall content is transferred from the server to the client and since it isn't necessary to reprocess a **head** tag with style sheets, script tags, and so forth.

Let's consider what a simple *partial* HTML response to the "Get Contacts" button might be when it is clicked.

It might look something like this:

*A partial HTML Response to an htmx Request*

```
<ul>
  <li><a href="mailto:joe@example.com">Joe</a></li>
  <li><a href="mailto:sarah@example.com">Sarah</a></li>
  <li><a href="mailto:fred@example.com">Fred</a></li>
</ul>
```

This is just a simple unordered list of contacts with some clickable elements in it. Note that there is no opening **html** tag, no **head** tag, and so forth: it is a *raw* HTML list, without any decoration around it. A response in a real application might of course contain far more sophisticated HTML than a simple list, but it wouldn't need to be an entire page of HTML.

This response is perfect for htmx: it will take the returned content and swap it in to the DOM. This is fast and efficient, leveraging the existing HTML parser in the browser. And this demonstrates that htmx is staying within the hypermedia paradigm: just like in a "normal" web application, we see hypermedia being transferred to the client in a stateless and uniform manner, where the client knows nothing about the internals of the resources being displayed.

This button just a more sophisticated component for building a Hypermedia Driven Application!

## 5.4. Targeting Other Elements

Now, given that htmx has issued a request and gotten back some HTML as a response, what should be done with it?

It turns out that the default htmx behavior is to simply put the returned content inside the element that triggered the request. That's obviously *not* a good thing in this situation: we will end up with a list of contacts awkwardly embedded within a button element on the page! That will look pretty



silly and is obviously not what we want.

Fortunately htmx provides another attribute, `hx-target` which can be used to specify exactly where in the DOM the new content should be placed. The value of the `hx-target` attribute is a Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) *selector* that allows you to specify the element to put the new hypermedia content into

Let's add a `div` tag that encloses the button with the id `main`. We will then target this `div` with the response:

#### *A Simple htmx-Powered Button*

```
<div id="main"> ①  
  
  <button hx-get="/contacts" hx-target="#main"> ②  
    Get The Contacts  
  </button>  
  
</div>
```

① A `div` element that wraps the button

② The `hx-target` attribute that specifies the target of the response

We have added `hx-target="#main"` to our button, where `#main` is a CSS selector that says "The thing with the ID 'main'". Note that by using CSS selectors, htmx is once again building on top of familiar and standard HTML concepts. By doing so it keeps the additional conceptual load beyond normal HTML to a minimum.

Given this new configuration, what would the HTML on the client look like after a user clicks on this button and a response has been received and processed?

It would look something like this:

#### *Our HTML After the htmx Request Finishes*

```
<div id="main">  
  <ul>  
    <li><a href="mailto:joe@example.com">Joe</a></li>  
    <li><a href="mailto:sarah@example.com">Sarah</a></li>  
    <li><a href="mailto:fred@example.com">Fred</a></li>  
  </ul>  
</div>
```

The response HTML has been swapped into the `div`, replacing the button that triggered the request. Transclusion! And this has happened "in the background" via AJAX, without a large page refresh. Nonetheless, this is *definitely* a hypermedia interaction. It isn't as coarse-grained as a normal, full web page request coming from an anchor might be, but it certainly falls within the same conceptual model!



## 5.5. Swap Styles

Now, maybe we don't want to simply load the content from the server response *into* the div, as child elements. Perhaps, for whatever reasons, we wish to *replace* the entire div with the response. Seems like a reasonable behavior to make configurable.

As luck would have it, htmx provides another attribute, `hx-swap`, that allows you to specify exactly *how* the content should be swapped into the DOM. (Are you beginning to sense a pattern here?)

The `hx-swap` attribute supports the following values:

- `innerHTML` - The default, replace the inner html of the target element
- `outerHTML` - Replace the entire target element with the response
- `beforebegin` - Insert the response before the target element
- `afterbegin` - Insert the response before the first child of the target element
- `beforeend` - Insert the response after the last child of the target element
- `afterend` - Insert the response after the target element
- `delete` - Deletes the target element regardless of the response
- `none` - No swap will be performed

The first two values, `innerHTML` and `outerHTML`, are taken from the standard DOM properties that allow you to replace content within an element or in place of an entire element respectively.

The next four values are taken from the `Element.insertAdjacentHTML()` DOM API, which allow you to place an element or elements around a given element in various ways.

The last two values, `delete` and `none` are specific to htmx, but should be fairly obvious for you understand.

Again, you can see that htmx tries to stay as close as possible to the existing web standards to keep your conceptual load to a minimum.

Let's consider if, rather than replacing the `innerHTML` content of the main div above, we wished to replace the *entire div* with the HTML response. To do so would require only a small change to our button:

*Replacing the Entire div*

```
<div id="main">

  <button hx-get="/contacts" hx-target="#main" hx-swap="outerHTML"> ①
    Get The Contacts
  </button>

</div>
```

① The `hx-swap` attribute specifies how to swap new content in

Now, when a response is received, the *entire* div will be replaced with the hypermedia content:

*Our HTML After the htmx Request Finishes*

```
<ul>
  <li><a href="mailto:joe@example.com">Joe</a></li>
  <li><a href="mailto:sarah@example.com">Sarah</a></li>
  <li><a href="mailto:fred@example.com">Fred</a></li>
</ul>
```

You can see that, with this change, the target div has been entirely removed from the DOM, and the list that was returned as the response has replaced it.

Later in the book we will see additional uses for **hx-swap**, for example when we implement infinite scrolling in our contact management application.

Note that with the **hx-get**, **hx-post**, **hx-put**, **hx-patch** and **hx-delete** attributes, we have addressed two of the opportunities for improvement that we enumerated regarding plain HTML:

- Opportunity 1: We can now issue an HTTP request with *any* element (in this case we are using a button)
- Opportunity 3: We can issue *any sort* of HTTP request we want, **PUT**, **PATCH** and **DELETE**, in particular

And, with **hx-target** and **hx-swap** we have addressed a third opportunity: the requirement that the entire page be replaced.

- Opportunity 4: We can now replace any element we want in our page via transclusion, and we can do so in any manner want

So, with seven relatively simple additional attributes, we have addressed most of the hypermedia shortcomings we identified earlier with HTML. Not bad!

There was one remaining shortcoming of HTML that we noted: the fact that only a **click** event (on an anchor) or a **submit** event (on a form) can trigger HTTP request. Let's look at how we can address that concern next.

## 5.6. Using Other Events

Thus far we have been using a button to issue a request with htmx. You have probably intuitively understood that the request will be issued when the button is clicked on since, well, that's what you do with buttons! You click on them!

And, yes, by default when an **hx-get** or another request-driving annotation from htmx is placed on a button, the request will be issued when the button is clicked.

However, htmx generalizes this notion of an event triggering a request by using, you guessed it, another attribute: **hx-trigger**. The **hx-trigger** attribute allows you to specify one or more events that will cause the element to trigger an HTTP request, overriding the default triggering event.

What is the "default triggering event" in htmx? It depends on the element type, but should be fairly intuitive to anyone familiar with HTML:

- Requests on `input`, `textarea` & `select` elements are triggered by the `change` event
- Requests on `form` elements are triggered on the `submit` event
- Requests on all other elements are triggered by the `click` event

So, let's consider if we wanted to trigger the request on our button when the mouse entered it. This is certainly not a recommended UX pattern, but let's just look at it as an example!

To do this, we would add the following attribute to our button:

*A Terrible Idea, But It Demonstrates The Concept!*

```
<div id="main">

  <button hx-get="/contacts" hx-target="#main" hx-swap="outerHTML" hx-
trigger="mouseenter"> ❶
    Get The Contacts
  </button>

</div>
```

❶ Issue a request... on the `mouseenter` event?

Now, whenever the mouse enters this button, a request will be triggered. Hey, we didn't say this was a *good* idea!

Let's try something a bit more realistic: let's add support for a keyboard shortcut for loading the contacts, `Ctrl-L` (for "Load"). To do this we will need to take advantage of some additional syntax that the `hx-trigger` attribute supports: event filters and additional arguments.

Event filters are a mechanism for determining if a given event should trigger a request or not. They are applied to an event by adding square brackets after it: `someEvent[someFilter]`. The filter itself is a JavaScript expression that will be evaluated when the given event occurs. If the result is truthy, in the JavaScript sense, it will trigger the request. If not, it will not.

In the case of keyboard shortcuts, we want to catch the `keyup` event in addition to the `click` event:

*A Start*

```
<div id="main">

  <button hx-get="/contacts" hx-target="#main" hx-swap="outerHTML" hx-trigger="click,
keyup"> ❶
    Get The Contacts
  </button>

</div>
```

## ① A trigger with two events

Note that we have a comma separated list of events that can trigger this element, allowing us to respond to more than one potential triggering event.

There are two problems with this:

- It will trigger requests on *any* keyup event
- It will trigger requests only when a keyup occurs *within* this button (an unlikely occurrence!)

To fix the first issue, lets use a trigger filter:

*Better!*

```
<div id="main">

  <button hx-get="/contacts" hx-target="#main" hx-swap="outerHTML" hx-trigger="click,
keyup[ctrlKey && key == 'l']"> ①
    Get The Contacts
  </button>

</div>
```

① **keyup** now has a filter, so the control key and L must be pressed

The trigger filter in this case is `ctrlKey && key == 'l'`. This can be read as "A key up event, where the `ctrlKey` property is true and the `key` property is equal to 'l'". Note that the properties `ctrlKey` and `key` are resolved against the event rather than the global name space, so you can easily filter on the properties of a given event. You can use any expression you like for a filter, however: calling a global JavaScript function, for example, is perfectly acceptable.

OK, so this filter limits the keyups that will trigger the request to only **Ctrl-L** presses. However, we still have the problem that, as it stands, only **keyup** events *within* the button will trigger the request. If you are familiar with the JavaScript event bubbling model: events typically "bubble" up to parent elements so an event like a keyup will be triggered first on the focused element, then on it's parent, and so on, until it reaches the top level **document** that is the root of all other elements.

In this case, this is obviously not what we want! People typically aren't typing characters *within* the button, they click on buttons! Here we want to listen to the **keyup** events on the entire page, or, equivalently, on the **body** element.

To fix this, we need to take advantage of another feature that the **hx-trigger** attribute supports: the ability to listen to *other elements* for events using the **from:** modifier. The ``from:`` modifier, as with many other attributes and modifiers in htmx, uses a CSS selector to select the element to listen on.

We can use it like this:

Better!

```
<div id="main">

  <button hx-get="/contacts" hx-target="#main" hx-swap="outerHTML" hx-trigger="click,
keyup[ctrlKey && key == 'L'] from:body">①
    Get The Contacts
  </button>

</div>
```

① Listen to the event on the **body** tag

Now, in addition to clicks, our button is listening for **keyup** events on the body of the page, and should issue a request both when it is clicked on, and also whenever someone hits **Ctrl-L** within the body of the page!

A nice little keyboard shortcut! Perfect!

The **hx-trigger** attribute is more elaborate than the other htmx attributes we have looked at so far, but that is because events, in general, are used more elaborately in modern user interfaces. The default options often suffice, however, and you shouldn't need to reach for complicated trigger features too often when using htmx.

That being said, even in the more elaborate situations like the example above, where we have a keyboard shortcut, the overall feel of htmx is *declarative* rather than *imperative* and follows along closely with the standard feel and philosophy of HTML.

And hey, check it out! With this final attribute, **hx-trigger**, we have addressed the final opportunity for improvement of HTML that we enumerated at the start of this chapter:

- Opportunity 2: We can use *any* event to trigger an HTTP request

That's a grand total of eight, count 'em, *eight* attributes that all fall squarely within the same conceptual model as normal HTML and that, by extending HTML as a hypermedia, open up whole new world of user interaction possibilities within HTML!

Here is a table summarizing the opportunities to improve HTML and which htmx attributes address them:

Table 1. Opportunities For Improving HTML

Opportunity To Improve HTML	htmx attributes
Any element should be able to make HTTP requests	<b>hx-get, hx-post, hx-put, hx-patch, hx-delete</b>
Any event should be able to trigger an HTTP request	<b>hx-trigger</b>
Any HTTP Action should be available	<b>hx-put, hx-patch, hx-delete</b>

Opportunity To Improve HTML	htmx attributes
Any place on the page should be replaceable (transclusion)	<code>hx-target</code> , <code>hx-swap</code>

## 5.7. Passing Request Parameters

So far we have been just looking at situation where a button makes a simple `GET` request. This is conceptually very close to what an anchor tag might do. But there is the other primary element in traditional hypermedia-based applications: forms. Forms are used to pass additional information beyond just a URL up to the server in a request. This information is typically entered into elements within the form via the various types of input tags in HTML.

htmx allows you include this additional information in a natural way that mirrors how HTML itself works.

### Enclosing Forms

The simplest way to pass additional input values up with a request in htmx is to enclose the input within a form tag.

Let's take our original button for retrieving contacts and repurpose it for searching contacts:

#### *A Simple htmx-Powered Button*

```
<div id="main">

  <form> ①
    <label for="search">Search Contacts:</label>
    <input id="search" name="q" type="search" placeholder="Search Contacts"> ②
    <button hx-post="/contacts" hx-target="#main"> ③
      Search The Contacts
    </button>
  </form>

</div>
```

- ① With an enclosing form tag, all inputs values will be submitted
- ② A new input that users will be able to enter search text into
- ③ Our button has been converted to an `hx-post`

Here we have added a form tag surrounding the button along with a search input that can be used to enter a term to search the contacts with.

Now, when a user clicks on the button, the value of the input with the id `search` will be included in the request. This is by virtue of the fact that there is a form tag enclosing both the button and the input: when an htmx-driven request is triggered, htmx will look up the DOM hierarchy for an enclosing form, and, if one is found, it will include all values from within that form. (This is sometimes referred to as "serializing" the form.)

You might have noticed that the button was switched from a **GET** request to a **POST** request. This is because, by default, htmx does *not* include the closest enclosing form for **GET** requests. This is to avoid serializing forms in situations where the data is not needed and to keep URLs clean when dealing with history entries, which we discuss in the next section.

## Including inputs

While enclosing all the inputs you want included in a request is the most common approach for including values from inputs in htmx requests, it isn't always possible or desirable: form tags can have layout consequences and simply cannot be placed in some spots in HTML documents. A good example of the latter situation is in table row (**tr**) elements: the **form** tag is not a valid child or parent of table rows, so you can't place a form within or around an entire row of data in a table.

To address this issue, htmx provides another mechanism for including value in requests: the **hx-include** attribute. The **hx-include** attribute allows you to select input values that you wish to include in a request via CSS selectors.

Here is the above example reworked to include the input, dropping the form:

### *A Simple htmx-Powered Button*

```
<div id="main">

  <label for="search">Search Contacts:</label>
  <input id="search" name="q" type="search" placeholder="Search Contacts">
  <button hx-post="/contacts" hx-target="#main" hx-include="#search"> ❶
    Search The Contacts
  </button>

</div>
```

❶ **hx-include** can be used to include values directly in a request

The **hx-include** attribute takes a CSS selector value and allows you to specify exactly which values to send along with the request. This can be useful if it is difficult to colocate an element issuing a request with all the inputs that need to be submitted with it. It is also useful when you do, in fact, want to submit values with a **GET** request and overcome the default behavior of htmx with respect to **GET** requests.

## Inline Values

A final way to include values in htmx-driven requests is to use the **hx-vals** attribute, which allows you to include "static" values in the request. This can be useful if you have additional information that you want to include in requests, but you don't want to have this information embedded in, for example, hidden inputs (which would be the standard mechanism for including additional, hidden information in HTML.)

Here is an example of **hx-vals**:

```
<button hx-get="/contacts" hx-vals='{ "state": "MT" }'> ❶  
  Get The Contacts In Montana  
</button>
```

❶ `hx-vals`, a JSON value to include in the request

The parameter `state` the value `MT` will be included in the `GET` request, resulting in a path and parameters that looks like this: `/contacts?state=MT`. One thing to note is that we switched the `hx-vals` attribute to use single quotes around its value. This is because JSON strictly requires double quotes and, therefore, to avoid escaping we needed to use the single-quote form for the attribute value.

This approach is useful when you have fixed data that you want to include in a request and you don't want to rely on something like a hidden input. You can also prefix `hx-vals` with a `js:` and pass values evaluated at the time of the request, which can be useful for including things like a dynamically maintained variable, or value from a third party javascript library.

For example, if the `state` variable were maintained dynamically, via some JavaScript, and there existed a JavaScript function, `getCurrentState()`, that returned the currently selected state, it could be included dynamically in htmx requests like so:

#### A Dynamic Value

```
<button hx-get="/contacts" hx-vals='js:{ "state": getCurrentState() }'> ❶  
  Get The Contacts In The Selected State  
</button>
```

❶ With the `js:` prefix, this expression will evaluate at submit time

These three mechanisms, using `form` tags, using the `hx-include` attribute and using the `hx-vals` attribute, allow you to include values in your hypermedia requests with htmx in a manner that should feel very familiar and in keeping with the spirit of HTML, while also giving you the flexibility to achieve what you want.

## 5.8. History Support

A final piece of functionality to discuss to close out our overview of htmx is browser history. When you use normal HTML links and forms, your browser will keep track of all the pages that you have visited. You can use the back button to navigate back to a previous page and, once you have done this, you can use a forward button to go forward to the original page you were on.

This notion of history was one of the killer features of the early web. Unfortunately it turns out that history becomes tricky when you move to the Single Page Application paradigm. An AJAX request does not, by itself, register a web page in your browsers history and this is a good thing! An AJAX request may have nothing to do with the state of the web page (perhaps it is just recording some activity in the browser), so it wouldn't be appropriate to create a new history entry for the interaction.



However, there are likely to be a lot of AJAX driven interactions in a Single Page Application where it is appropriate to create a history entry. And JavaScript does provide an API for working with the history cache. Unfortunately the API is very difficult to work with and is often simply ignored by developers. If you have ever used a Single Page Application and accidentally clicked the back button, only to lose your entire application state and have to start over, you have seen this problem in action.

In htmx, as in Single Page Application frameworks, you often need to explicitly work with the history API. Fortunately, htmx makes it much easier to do so than most other libraries.

Consider the button we have been discussing again:

*Our trusty button*

```
<button hx-get="/contacts" hx-target="#main">
  Get The Contacts
</button>
```

As it stands, if you click this button it will retrieve the content from `/contacts` and load it into the element with the id `main`, but it will *not* create a new history entry. If we wanted it to create a history entry we would add another attribute to the button, `hx-push-url`:

*Our trusty button, now with history!*

```
<button hx-get="/contacts" hx-target="#main" hx-push-url="true"> ①
  Get The Contacts
</button>
```

① `hx-push-url` will create an entry in history when the button is clicked

Now, when the button is clicked, the `/contacts` path will be put into the browser's navigation bar and a history entry will be created for it. Furthermore, if the user clicks the back button, the original content for the page will be restored, along with the original URL.

`hx-push-url` might sound a little obscure, but this is based on the JavaScript API, `history.pushState()`. This notion of "pushing" derives from the fact that history entries are modeled as a stack, and so you are "pushing" new entries onto the top of the stack of history entries.

With this (relatively) simple mechanism, htmx allows you to integrate with the back button in a way that mimics the "normal" behavior of HTML. Not bad if you look at what other javascript libraries require of you!

## Drawbacks To The htmx Approach

htmx is a very pure extension to HTML, aiming to incrementally improve the language as a hypermedia in a manner that is conceptually coherent with the underlying markup language. This approach, like any technical choice, is not without tradeoffs: by staying so close to HTML, htmx does not give developers a lot of infrastructure that many might feel should be there "by default".

A good example is the concept of modal dialogs. Many web applications today make heavy use of modal dialogs, effectively in-page pop-ups that sit "on top" of the existing page. (Of course, in reality, this is an optical illusion and it is all just a web page: the web has no notion of "modals" in this regard.)

A web developer might expect htmx to provide some sort of modal dialog component out of the box, since it is, after all, a front-end library, and many front end libraries offer support for this pattern.

htmx, however, has no notion of modals. That's not to say you can't use modals with htmx, and we will look at how you can do so later. But htmx, like HTML itself, won't give you an API specifically for creating modals. You would need to use a 3rd party library or roll your own modal implementation and then integrate htmx into it if you want to use modals within an htmx-based application.

This is the design tradeoff that htmx makes: it retains conceptual purity as an extension of HTML, and, in exchange, lacks some of the "batteries included" features found in other front end libraries.

As an aside, it's worth noting that htmx *can* be used to effectively implement a slightly different UX pattern, inline editing, which is often a good alternative to modals, and, in our opinion, is more consistent with the stateless nature of the web. We will look at this approach later in the book, and you can see an example of it here: <https://htmx.org/examples/click-to-edit/>

## 5.9. Summary

- Although it has been wildly successful, HTML presents a few opportunities for improvement as a hypermedia
- For example, plain HTML doesn't give you access to non-GET or POST HTTP requests
- Additionally, it only offers a very limited set of hypermedia controls: links and forms
- Perhaps most importantly, plain HTML updates the entire page on every HTTP request
- htmx addresses each of these opportunities, increasing the expressiveness of HTML as a hypermedia
- The `hx-get`, `hx-post`, etc. attributes can be used to issue requests with any element in the dom
- The `hx-swap` attribute can be used to control exactly how HTML responds to htmx requests should be swapped into the DOM

- The `hx-trigger` attribute can be used to control the event that triggers a request
- Event filters can be used in `hx-trigger` to narrow down the exact situation that you want to issue a request for
- htmx offers three mechanisms for including additional input information with requests:
  - Enclosing elements within a `form` tag
  - Using the `hx-include` attribute to select inputs to include in the request
  - `hx-vals` for embedding values directly via JSON or, dynamically, resolving values via JavaScript
- htmx also provides integration with the browser history and back button, using the `hx-push-url` attribute

# Chapter 6. htmx In Action

This chapter covers

- Installing htmx in Contact.app
- Adding AJAX-based navigation to Contact.app via "boosting"
- Implementing a proper delete mechanic for contacts
- Validating emails as the user types
- Implementing paging in Contact.app
- Creating a "Click To Load" button
- Adding the "Infinite Scroll" pattern

## 6.1. Installing htmx

Now that we've seen how htmx extends HTML as a hypermedia, it's time to put it into action. We will still be exchanging hypermedia, that is HTML, with our server: we will issue HTTP requests and get back HTML. But, with the additional functionality that htmx provides, we will have a more *powerful hypermedia* to work with, allowing us to accomplish much more sophisticated interfaces. This will allow us to address user experience issues, such as long feedback cycles or painful page refreshes, without needing to write much, if any, JavaScript, without creating a JSON API, and so on: everything will be implemented in hypermedia, using the core concepts of the original web!

The first thing we need to do is install the htmx javascript library in our web application. We are going to do this by downloading the source and saving it locally in our application, so we aren't dependent on any external systems. This is known as "vendoring" the library. We can grab the latest version of htmx by navigating our browser to <https://unpkg.com/htmx.org>, which will redirect it to the latest version of the library.

We can save the content from this URL into the `static/js/htmx.js` file in our project.

You may, of course, use a more sophisticated JavaScript package manager such as Node Package Manager (NPM) or yarn to install htmx by referring to its package name, `htmx.org`, in the usual manner for your tool. However, htmx is very small (approximately 12kb when compressed and zipped) and is dependency free, so it does not require an elaborate mechanism or build tool in order to install and use.

Now, with htmx downloaded locally to our system, we can now "install" the library. We can do so by adding the the following code to the `head` tag in our `layout.html` file, so it will be included on every page in our web application:

```
<head>
  <script src="/js/htmx.js"></script>
  ...
</head>
```

Recall that the `layout.html` file is a *layout* file included in most templates that wraps the content of those templates in common HTML, including a `head` element that we are using here to install htmx.

And, believe it or not, that's it! No need to add a build step or anything else to our project, this simple inclusion of the htmx script file will make its functionality available across our entire application.

## 6.2. AJAX-ifying Our Application

The first feature of we are going to take advantage of is a bit of a "cheater" feature: `hx-boost`. The `hx-boost` attribute is unlike most other attributes in htmx. Other htmx attributes tend to be very focused on one aspect of improving HTML: `hx-trigger` focuses on the events that trigger a request, `hx-swap` focuses on how responses are swapped into the DOM, and so forth.

The `hx-boost` attribute, in contrast, operates at a very high level: when you put it on an element with the value `true`, it will "boost" all anchor tags and forms within that element. Boost, in this case, means it will convert those elements from regular anchor tags and forms into AJAX-powered anchors and forms. This means that navigation will "feel" faster because the browser will not be re-interpreting the `<head>` tags and so forth.

So boosted links, for example, rather than issuing a "normal" browser request, will issue an AJAX `GET` and replace the whole body with the response.

### Boosted Links

Let's take a look at an example of a boosted link. Here we have a link to a hypothetical settings page. Because it has `hx-boost="true"` on it, htmx will prevent the normal link behavior of issuing a request to the `/settings` path and replacing the entire page with the response. Instead, htmx will issue an AJAX request to `/settings`, taking the result and replacing the `body` element with the new content.

#### A Boosted Link

```
<a href="/settings" hx-boost="true">Settings</a> ①
```

① A simple attribute makes this link AJAX-powered

Now, you might wonder: what's the advantage here? We are issuing an AJAX request and simply replacing the entire body.

Is that significantly different from just issuing a normal link request?

The answer is yes: in a boosted link, the browser is able to avoid any processing associated with the head tag. The head tag often contains many scripts and CSS file references. In the boosted scenario, it is not necessary to re-process those resources: the scripts and styles have already been processed and will continue to apply to the new content. This can often be a very easy way to speed up your hypermedia application.

A second question you might have is: does the response have to be formatted specially to work with `hx-boost`? After all, the settings page would normally render an `html` tag, with a `head` tag and so forth. Do you need to handle "boosted" requests specially?

The answer in this case is no: `htmx` is smart enough to pull out only the content of the `body` tag to swap in to the new page. The `head` tag, etc. are all ignored. This means you don't need to do anything special on the server side to render templates that `hx-boost` can handle: just return the normal HTML for your page, and it should work fine.

Note that boosted links (and forms) will also continue to update the navigation bar and history, so users will be able to use the browser back button, be able to copy and paste URLs (or "deep links") and so forth. It will act pretty much like a "normal" web application, just faster.

## Boosted Forms

Boosted form tags work in a similar way to boosted anchor tags: a boosted form will use an AJAX request rather than the usual browser-issued request, and will replace the entire body with the response:

Here is an example of a form that posts messages to the `/messages` end point using an HTTP `POST` request. By adding `hx-boost` to it, those requests will be done in AJAX, rather than the normal browser behavior.

### *A Boosted Form*

```
<form action="/messages" method="post" hx-boost="true">①
  <input type="text" name="message" placeholder="Enter A Message...">
  <button>Post Your Message</button>
</form>
```

① As with the link, a simple attribute makes this form AJAX-powered

Another advantage of the AJAX-based request that `hx-boost` uses is that it avoids what is known as a "flash of unstyled content", which is when a page renders before all of the styling information has been downloaded for it. This causes a disconcerting momentary flash of the unstyled content. The content is then restyled when all the style information is available. You probably notice this as a flicker when you move around the internet: text, images and other content can "jump around" on the page as styles are applied to it.

With `hx-boost` the sites styling is already loaded *before* the content is retrieved, so there is no such flash of unstyled content. This can make a "boosted" application feel both smoother and snappier in general.

## Attribute Inheritance

Let's expand on our previous example of a boosted link, and add a few more boosted links alongside it. We add links such that we have one to the `/contacts` page, the one to the `/settings` page, and one to the `/help` page. All these links are boosted and will behave in the manner that we have described above.

But this feels a little redundant, doesn't it? It is a shame we have to annotate all three links with the `hx-boost="true"`, right next to one another.

### *A Set of Boosted Links*

```
<a href="/contacts" hx-boost="true">Contacts</a>
<a href="/settings" hx-boost="true">Settings</a>
<a href="/help" hx-boost="true">Help</a>
```

Luckily, htmx offers a feature to help reduce redundancy here: attribute inheritance. With most attributes in htmx, if you place it on a parent, it will also apply to all children elements. This is how Cascading Style Sheets work, and that idea inspired htmx to adopt a similar "cascading htmx attributes" concept.

So, to avoid the redundancy in this example, let's introduce a `div` element that encloses all the links and "hoist" the `hx-boost` attribute up to it. This will let us remove the redundant `hx-boost` attributes, but ensure all the links are still boosted, inheriting that functionality from the parent `div`. Note that any legal element type could be used here, we just used a `div` out of habit.

### *Boosting Links Via The Parent*

```
<div hx-boost="true"> ①
  <a href="/contacts">Contacts</a>
  <a href="/settings">Settings</a>
  <a href="/help">Help</a>
</div>
```

① The `hx-boost` has been moved to the parent `div`

But what if you have a link that you *don't* want boosted within an element that has `hx-boost="true"` on it? A good example is a link to a resource to be downloaded, such as a PDF. Downloading a file can't be handled well by an AJAX request, so you'd want that link to behave normally.

To deal with this situation, you would override the parent `hx-boost` value with `hx-boost="false"` on the element in question:

```
<div hx-boost="true"> ①
  <a href="/contacts">Contacts</a>
  <a href="/settings">Settings</a>
  <a href="/help">Help</a>
  <a href="/help/documentation.pdf" hx-boost="false">Download Docs</a> ②
</div>
```

- ① The `hx-boost` is still on the parent div
- ② The boosting behavior is overridden for this link

Here we have a new link to a documentation PDF that we wish to function normally. We have added `hx-boost="false"` to the link and this will override the `hx-boost="true"` on the parent, reverting this link to regular link behavior and allowing the download behavior that we want.

## Progressive Enhancement

A very nice aspect of `hx-boost` is that it "progressively enhances" web applications. Consider the links in the example above. What would happen if someone did not have JavaScript enabled? Nothing much! The application would continue to work, but it would issue regular HTTP requests, rather than AJAX-based HTTP requests. This means that your web application will work for the maximum number of users, with users of more modern browsers (or users who have not turned off JavaScript) able to take advantage of the benefits of AJAX-style navigation, but other people still able to use the app just fine. This is sometimes called "graceful degradation" as well.

Compare this with a JavaScript heavy Single Page Application: it simply won't function without JavaScript, obviously. It is very difficult to adopt a progressive enhancement approach within that model.

This is not to say that htmx *always* offers progressive enhancement. It is certainly possible to build features that do not offer a "No JS" fallback in htmx, and, in fact, many of the features we will build later in the book will fall into this category. (I will note when a feature is progressive enhancement friendly and when it is not.) Ultimately, it is up to you, the developer, to decide if the tradeoffs of progressive enhancement (more basic UX functionality, a limited improvement over plain HTML) are worth the benefits for your applications users.

## Adding `hx-boost` to Contact.app

For our contact app we want this "boost" behavior... well, everywhere. Right? Why not? How could we accomplish that?

Pretty darned easy: just add `hx-boost` on the `body` tag of our `layout.html` template, and be done with it!

1. Boosting The Entire Contact.app



```
<html>
...
<body hx-boost="true">①
...
</body>
</html>
```

① All links and forms will be boosted now!

Now every link and form in our application will use AJAX by default, making it feel much snappier! Consider the "New Contact" link on the main page:

#### 1. A Newly Boosted "Add Contact" Link

```
<a href="/contacts/new">Add Contact</a>
```

Even though we haven't touched anything on this link or on the server side handling of the URL it targets, it will now "just work" with AJAX (or, if JavaScript isn't enabled, using standard web navigation), including updating history, back button support and so on.

All this with one, single attribute. This extremely high power-to-weight ratio is why `hx-boost`, which is so different from every other attribute in htmx, is part of the library. It's just too good an idea not to include!

So, that's it, books over! You've got yourself an AJAX-powered hypermedia application now!

Of course, I'm kidding. There is a lot more to htmx, and there is a lot more room for improvement in our application, so let's keep rolling.

## 6.3. A Next Step: Deleting Contacts

In Chapter 2 you'll recall that we had a small form on the edit page of a contact to delete the contact:

*Plain HTML Form To Delete A Contact*

```
<form action="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/delete" method="post">
  <button>Delete Contact</button>
</form>
```

This form issued an HTTP `POST` to, for example, `/contacts/42/delete`, in order to delete the contact with the ID 42.

I mentioned previously that one of the tremendously annoying things about HTML is that you can't issue an HTTP `DELETE` (or `PUT` or `PATCH`) request directly, even though these are all part of HTTP and HTTP is *obviously designed* for transferring HTML! But now, with htmx, we have a chance to rectify this situation.

The "right thing", from a REST-ful, resource oriented perspective is, rather than issuing an HTTP `POST` to `/contacts/42/delete`, to issue an HTTP `DELETE` to `/contacts/42`. We want to delete the contact. The contact is a resource. The URL for that resource is `/contacts/42`. So the ideal situation is a `DELETE` to `/contacts/42/`.

So, how can we update our application to do this while still staying within the hypermedia model? We can simply take advantage of the `hx-delete` attribute, like so:

*An htmx Powered Button For Deleting A Contact*

```
<button hx-delete="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}">Delete Contact</button>
```

Pretty simple! There are two things, in particular, to notice about this new implementation:

- We no longer need a `form` tag to wrap the button, because the button itself carries the hypermedia action that it performs directly on itself.
- We no longer need to use the somewhat awkward `"/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/delete"` route, but can simply use the `"/contacts/{{ contact.id }}"` route, since we are issuing a `DELETE`, which disambiguates the operation we are performing on the resource from other potential operations!

However, I should note, unlike with the `hx-boost` examples above, this solution will *not* degrade gracefully. To make this solution degrade gracefully, we would need to wrap the button in a form element and handle a `POST` on the server side as well. In the interest of keeping things simple, we are going to omit that more elaborate solution.

## Updating The Server Side

We have updated our client-side code, that is our HTML, so it now does "the right thing" from a hypermedia perspective: we want to delete a contact, and we are issuing a `DELETE` request. But we still have some work to do! Since we updated both the route and the HTTP action we are using, we are going to need to update the server side implementation as well to handle this new HTTP Request.

Here is the original code:

```
@app.route("/contacts/<contact_id>/delete", methods=["POST"])
def contacts_delete(contact_id=0):
    contact = Contact.find(contact_id)
    contact.delete()
    flash("Deleted Contact!")
    return redirect("/contacts")
```

We are going to have to do two things: first we need to update the route for our handler to the new location and method we are using to delete contacts. This will be relatively straight forward.

Unfortunately, there is a problem with our current delete handler: by default, in Flask the `redirect()` method responds with a `302` HTTP Response Code.

Now, according to the Mozilla Developer Network (MDN) web docs, this means that the HTTP *method* of the request *will be unchanged* when the redirected request is issued.

We are issuing a **DELETE** request with htmx and then being redirected to the `/contacts` path by flask. According to this logic, that would mean that the redirected request would still be a **DELETE** method, so we would issue a **DELETE** request to `/contacts`! Yikes! That looks like a request to delete all the contacts in our system, doesn't it?

It wouldn't do that, of course, since we haven't implemented that behavior, but still, this is definitely not what we want: we'd like the redirect to simply issue a **GET**, slightly modifying the Post/Redirect/Get behavior we discussed earlier to be a Delete/Redirect/Get.

Fortunately for us, there is a response code, **303 See Other**, that does the right thing: when you respond with a 303 response code and a redirect, the browser will issue a **GET** to the new location. So we want to use this response code in our flask application. Thankfully, this is very easy: there is a second parameter to `redirect()` that takes the numeric response code you wish to send.

## Putting It All Together

So we want to make the following changes to our server side code:

- We want to change the HTTP action associated with it to **DELETE**
- We want to remove the ugly `/delete` at the end of the path, since we are now using a proper HTTP action
- We want to be sure to issue a **303 See Other** response code so we properly issue a **GET** after the redirect

Here is our updated code:

```
@app.route("/contacts/<contact_id>", methods=["DELETE"]) ①
def contacts_delete(contact_id=0):
    contact = Contact.find(contact_id)
    contact.delete()
    flash("Deleted Contact!")
    return redirect("/contacts", 303) ②
```

① A slightly different path and method for the handler

② The response code is now a 303

Now, when you want to remove a given contact, you can simply issue a **DELETE** to the same URL as you used to access the contact in the first place. A much more natural HTTP approach to deleting a resource!

## Targeting The Right Element

We aren't quite out of the woods yet, however. As you may recall, by default htmx "targets" the element that triggers a request, and will place the HTML returned by the server inside that element. In this case, since the redirect to `/contacts` is going to re-render the entire contact list, we will end

up in the unfortunate situation where the entire list ends up *inside* the "Delete Contact" button!

Mis-targeting elements comes up from time to time in htmx and can lead to some pretty funny situations.

The fix for this is to add an explicit target to the button, targeting the `body` element with the response:

#### *A fixed htmx Powered Button For Deleting A Contact*

```
<button hx-delete="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}"
        hx-target="body"> ❶
  Delete Contact
</button>
```

❶ We have added an explicit target to the button now

Now our button behaves as expected: clicking on the button will issue an HTTP `DELETE` to the server against the URL for the current contact, delete the contact and redirect back to the contact list page, with a nice flash message. Perfect!

## Updating The Location Bar URL Properly

Well, almost.

If you click on the button you will notice that, despite the redirect, the URL in the location bar is not correct. It still points to `/contacts/{{ contact.id }}`. This is because we haven't told htmx to update the URL: it just issues the `DELETE` request and then updates the DOM with the response.

As we mentioned, boosting will naturally update the location bar for you, mimicking normal anchors and forms, but in this case we are building a custom button because we want to issue a `DELETE`, something that is not possible in plain HTML. So we need to let htmx know that we want the resulting URL from this request "pushed" into the location bar.

We can achieve this by adding the `hx-push-url` attribute with the value `true` to our button:

#### *Deleting A Contact, Now With Proper Location Information*

```
<button hx-delete="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}"
        hx-push-url="true" ❶
        hx-target="body">
  Delete Contact
</button>
```

❶ We tell htmx to push the redirected URL up into the location bar

Now we are done. We have a button that, all by itself, is able to issue a properly formatted HTTP `DELETE` request to the correct URL, and the UI and location bar are all updated correctly. This was accomplished with three declarative attributes placed directly on the button `hx-delete`, `hx-target` and `hx-push-url`. Not only that, we were able to remove the enclosing form tag as a bonus! Pretty clean!

## One Last Thing

And yet, if you are like me, something probably doesn't feel quite right here. Deleting a contact is a pretty darned destructive action, isn't it? And what if someone accidentally clicked on the "Delete Contact" button when they meant to click on the "Save" button?

As it stands now we would just delete that contact and too bad, so sad for the user.

Fortunately htmx has an easy mechanism for adding a confirmation message on destructive operations like this: the `hx-confirm` attribute. You can place this attribute on an element, with a message as its value, and the JavaScript method `confirm()` will be called before a request is issued, which will show a simple confirmation dialog to the user asking them to confirm the action. Very easy and a great way to prevent accidents.

Here is how we would add confirmation of the contact delete operation:

### *Confirming Deletion*

```
<button hx-delete="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}"
        hx-push-url="true"
        hx-confirm="Are you sure you want to delete this contact?" ①
        hx-target="body">
  Delete Contact
</button>
```

① This message will be shown to the user, asking them to confirm the delete

Now, when someone clicks on the "Delete Contact" button, they will be presented with a prompt that asks "Are you sure you want to delete this contact?" and they will have an opportunity to cancel if they clicked the button in error. Very nice.

With this final change we now have a pretty solid "delete contact" mechanic: we are using the correct REST-ful routes and HTTP Methods, we are confirming the deletion, and we have removed a lot of the cruft that normal HTML imposes on us, all while using declarative attributes in our HTML and staying firmly within the normal hypermedia model of the web.

## Progressive Enhancement?

One thing to note about our solution, however, is that it is *not* a progressive enhancement to our web application: if someone has disabled JavaScript then this functionality will no longer work. You could do additional work to keep the older mechanism working in a JavaScript-disabled environment, but it would introduce additional and redundant code.

Progressive Enhancement can be a hot-button topic in web development, with lots of passionate opinions and perspectives. htmx, like most JavaScript libraries, makes it possible to create applications that do not function in the absence of JavaScript. Retaining support for non-JavaScript clients requires additional work and complexity. It is important to determine exactly how important supporting non-JavaScript clients is before you begin using htmx, or any other JavaScript framework, for improving your web applications.

## 6.4. Next Steps: Validating Contact Emails

Let's move on to another improvement in our application: a big part of any web app is validating the data that is submitted to the server side: ensuring emails are correctly formatted and unique, numeric values are valid, dates are acceptable, and so forth. Currently, our application has a small amount of validation that is done entirely server side and that displays an error message when an error is detected.

We are not going to go into the details of how validation works in the model objects, but recall what the code for updating a contact looks like from Chapter 2:

### *Server Side Validation On Contact Update*

```
def contacts_edit_post(contact_id=0):
    c = Contact.find(contact_id)
    c.update(request.form['first_name'], request.form['last_name'],
request.form['phone'], request.form['email'])
    if c.save(): ❶
        flash("Updated Contact!")
        return redirect("/contacts/" + str(contact_id))
    else:
        return render_template("edit.html", contact=c) ❷
```

❶ We attempt to save the contact

❷ If the save does not succeed we re-render the form to display error messages

So we attempt to save the contact, and, if the `save()` method returns true, we redirect to the contact's detail page. If the `save()` method does not return true, that indicates that there was a validation error and so, instead of redirecting we re-render the HTML for editing the contact. This gives the user a chance to correct the errors, which are displayed alongside the inputs.

Let's take a look at the HTML for the email input:

### *Validation Error Messages*

```
<p>
  <label for="email">Email</label>
  <input name="email" id="email" type="text" placeholder="Email" value="{{
contact.email }}">
  <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['email'] }}</span>❶
</p>
```

❶ Display any errors associated with the email field

We have a label for the input, an input of type `text` and then a bit of HTML to display any error messages associated with the email. When the template is rendered on the server, if there are errors associated with the contact's email, they will be displayed in this span, which will be highlighted red.

## Server Side Validation Logic

Right now there is a bit of logic in the contact class that checks if there are any other contacts with the same email address, and adds an error to the contact model if so, since we do not want to have duplicate emails in the database. This is a very common validation example: emails are usually unique and adding two contacts with the same email is almost certainly a user error.

Again, we are not going to go into the details of how validation works in our models, in the interest of staying focused on hypermedia, but whatever server side framework you are using almost certainly has some sort of infrastructure available for validating data and collecting errors to display to the user. This sort of infrastructure is very common in Web 1.0 server side frameworks.

The error message shown when a user attempts to save a contact with a duplicate email is "Email Must Be Unique":

[screenshot validation error] | *screenshot\_validation\_error.png*

*Figure 5. Email Validation Error*

All of this is done using plain HTML and using Web 1.0 techniques, and it works well.

However, as the application currently stands, there are two annoyances:

- First, there is no email format validation: you can enter whatever characters you'd like as an email and, as long as they are unique, the system will allow it
- Second, if a user has entered a duplicate email, they will not find this fact out until they have filled in all the fields because we only check the email's uniqueness when all the data is submitted. This could be quite annoying if the user was accidentally reentering a contact and had to put all the contact information in before being made aware of this fact!

## Updating Our Input Type

For the first issue, we have a pure HTML mechanism for improving our application: HTML 5 supports inputs of type `email`! All we need to do is switch our input from type `text` to type `email`, and the browser will enforce that the value entered properly matches the email format:

*Changing The Input To Type `email`*

```
<p>
  <label for="email">Email</label>
  <input name="email" id="email" type="email" placeholder="Email" value="{{
contact.email }}"> ①
  <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['email'] }}</span>
</p>
```

① A simple change of the `type` attribute to `email` ensures that values entered are valid emails

With this change, when the user enters a value that isn't a valid email, the browser will display an error message asking for a properly formed email in that field.

So a simple single-attribute change done in pure HTML improves our validation and addresses the first annoyance we noted!

Not bad!

## Server Side vs. Client Side Validations

More experienced web developers might be grinding their teeth a bit at the code above: this validation is done entirely on *the client side*. That is, we are relying on the browser to detect the malformed email and correct the user. Unfortunately, the client side is not trustworthy: a browser may have a bug in it that allows the user to circumvent the validation code. Or, worse, the user may be malicious and figure out a mechanism around our validation entirely. For example: they could simply inspect the email input and revert its type to text.

This is a perpetual danger in web development: all validations done on the client side cannot be trusted and, if the validation is important, *must be redone* on the server side. This is less of a problem in Hypermedia Driven Applications than in Single Page Applications, because the focus of HDAs is the server side, but it is still something worth bearing in mind as you build your application!

## Inline Validation

While we have improved our validation experience a bit, the user must still submit the form to get any feedback on duplicate emails. We can use htmx to improve this user experience.

It would be better if the user were able to see a duplicate email error immediately after entering the email value. It turns out that inputs fire a **change** event and, in fact, the **change** event is the *default trigger* for inputs in htmx. So, what we want to have happen is as follows: when the user enters an email, we immediately issue a request to the server and validate that email, and render an error message if necessary.

Recall the current HTML for our email input:

### *The Initial Email Configuration*

```
<p>
  <label for="email">Email</label>
  <input name="email" id="email" type="email" placeholder="Email" value="{{
contact.email }}"> ❶
  <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['email'] }}</span> ❷
</p>
```

❶ This is the input that we want to have drive an HTTP request to validate the email

❷ This is the span we want to put the error message, if any, into



So we want to add an **hx-get** to this input, which will cause it to issue an HTTP **GET** request to a given URL to validate the email. We then want to target the error span following the input with any error message returned from the server.

Let's make those changes to our HTML:

#### *Our Updated HTML*

```
<p>
  <label for="email">Email</label>
  <input name="email" id="email" type="email"
    hx-get="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/email" ❶
    hx-target="next .error" ❷
    placeholder="Email" value="{{ contact.email }}"> ❸
  <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['email'] }}</span>
</p>
```

❶ Issue an HTTP **GET** to the **email** endpoint the contact

❷ Target the next element with the class **error** on it

Now, with these two simple attributes in place, whenever someone changes the value of the input (remember, **change** is the *default* trigger for inputs in **htmx**) an HTTP request will be issued to the given URL and, if there are any errors, they will be loaded into the error span.

## Validating Emails Server Side

Next, let's look at the server side implementation. We are going to add another end point, similar to our edit end point in some ways: it is going to look up the contact based on the ID encoded in the URL. In this case, however, we only want to update the email of the contact, and we obviously don't want to save it! Instead, we will call the **validate()** method on it.

That method will validate the email is unique and so forth. At that point we can return any errors associated with the email directly, or the empty string if none exist.

Here is the code:

#### *Our Email Validation End-Point*

```
@app.route("/contacts/<contact_id>/email", methods=["GET"])
def contacts_email_get(contact_id=0):
    c = Contact.find(contact_id) ❶
    c.email = request.args.get('email') ❷
    c.validate() ❸
    return c.errors.get('email') or "" ❹
```

❶ Look up the contact by id

❷ Update its email (note that since this is a **GET**, we use the **args** property rather than the **form** property)

❸ Validate the contact

- ④ Return a string, either the errors associated with the email field or, if there are none, the empty string

With this small bit of code in place, we now have the following very nice user experience: when a user enters an email and tabs to the next field, they are immediately notified if the email is already taken!

Note that the email validation is *still* done when the entire contact is submitted for an update, so there is no danger of allowing duplicate email contacts to slip through: we have simply made it possible for users to catch this situation earlier by use of htmx.

It is also worth noting that this email validation *must* be done on the server side: you cannot determine that an email is unique across all contacts unless you have access to the data store of record. This is another simplifying aspect of Hypermedia Driven Applications: since validations are done server side, you have access to all the data you might need to do any sort of validation you'd like.

Here again I want to stress that this interaction is done entirely within the hypermedia model: we are using declarative attributes to exchange hypermedia with the server in a manner very similar to how links or forms work, but we have managed to improve our user experience dramatically!

## Taking Our User Experience Further

Now, despite the fact that we haven't written a lot of code here, this is a fairly sophisticated user interface, at least when compared with plain HTML-based applications. However, if you have used more advanced web applications you have probably seen the pattern where an email field (or similar) is validated *as you type*.

This is surely beyond the reach of a Hypermedia Driven Application, right? Only a sophisticated Single Page Application framework could provide that level of interactivity!

Oh ye of little faith. With a bit more effort, we can use htmx to achieve this user experience.

In fact, all we need to do is to change our trigger. Currently, we are using the default trigger for inputs, which is the `change` event. To validate as the user types, we would want to capture the `keyup` event as well:

*Triggering With `keyup` Events*

```
<p>
  <label for="email">Email</label>
  <input name="email" id="email" type="email"
    hx-get="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/email"
    hx-target="next .error"
    hx-trigger="change, keyup" ①
    placeholder="Email" value="{{ contact.email }}">
  <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['email'] }}</span>
</p>
```

- ① An explicit trigger has been declared, and it triggers on both the `change` and `keyup` events

With this tiny change, every time a user types a character we will issue a request and validate the email! Simple!

## Debouncing Our Validation Requests

Unfortunately, this is probably not what you want: issuing a new request on every key up event would be very wasteful and could potentially overwhelm your server. What we want to do is only issue the request if the user has paused for a small amount of time. This is called "debouncing" the input, where requests are delayed until things have "settled down".

htmx supports a `delay` modifier for triggers that allows you to debounce a request by adding a delay before the request is sent. If another event of the same kind appears within that interval, htmx will not issue the request and will reset the timer. This is exactly what we want for this situation: if the user is busy typing in an email we won't interrupt them, but as soon as they pause or leave the field, we'll issue a request.

Let's add a delay of 200 milliseconds to the `keyup` trigger, which is long enough to detect that the user has stopped typing.:

### Debouncing the `keyup` Event

```
<p>
  <label for="email">Email</label>
  <input name="email" id="email" type="email"
    hx-get="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/email"
    hx-target="next .error"
    hx-trigger="change, keyup delay:200ms" ❶
    placeholder="Email" value="{{ contact.email }}">
  <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['email'] }}</span>
</p>
```

❶ We debounce the `keyup` event by adding a `delay` modifier

Now we no longer issue a stream of validation requests as the user types. Instead, we wait until the user pauses for a bit and then issue the request. Much better for our server, and still a great user experience!

## Ignoring Non-Mutating Keys

There is one last thing we might want to address: as it stand we will issue a request no matter *which* keys are pressed, even if they are keys like the arrow keys, which have no effect on the value of the input. It would be nice if there were a way to only issue a request if the input value has changed. It turns out that htmx has support for that pattern using the `changed` modifier for events. (Not to be confused with the `change` event!)

By adding `changed` to our `keyup` trigger, the input will not issue validation requests unless the `keyup` event actually updates the inputs value:

```
<p>
  <label for="email">Email</label>
  <input name="email" id="email" type="email"
    hx-get="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/email"
    hx-target="next .error"
    hx-trigger="change, keyup delay:200ms changed" ❶
    placeholder="Email" value="{{ contact.email }}">
  <span class="error">{{ contact.errors['email'] }}</span>
</p>
```

❶ We do away with pointless requests by only issuing them when the inputs value has actually changed

Now that's some pretty good-looking ode!

With a total of three attributes and a simple new server-side end point, we have added a fairly sophisticated user experience to our web application. Even better, any email validation rules we add on the server side will *automatically* just work using this model: because we are using hypermedia as our communication mechanism there is no need to keep a client-side and server-side model in sync with one another.

This is a great demonstration of the power of the hypermedia architecture!

## 6.5. Another Improvement: Paging

Currently, our application does not support paging: if there are 10,000 contacts in the database we will show 10,000 contacts on the main page! Let's fix that, so that we only show ten contacts at a time with a "Next" and "Previous" link if there are more than 10 or if we are beyond the first page.

The first change we will need to make is to add a simple paging widget to our `index.html` template. Here we will conditionally include two links:

- If we are beyond the first page, we will include a link to the previous page
- If there are ten contacts in the current result set, we will include a link to the next page

This isn't a perfect paging widget: ideally we'd show the number of pages and offer the ability to do more specific page navigation, and there is the possibility that the next page might have 0 results in it since we aren't checking the total results count, but it will do for now for our simple application.

Let's look at the jinja template code for this.

## Adding Paging Widgets To Our List of Contacts

```
<div>
  <span style="float: right"> ①
    {% if page > 1 %}
      <a href="/contacts?page={{ page - 1 }}">Previous</a> ②
    {% endif %}
    {% if contacts|length == 10 %}
      <a href="/contacts?page={{ page + 1 }}">Next</a> ③
    {% endif %}
  </span>
</div>
```

- ① Include a new div under the table to hold our navigation links
- ② If we are beyond page 1, include an anchor tag with the page decremented by one
- ③ If there are 10 contacts in the current page, include an anchor tag linking to the next page by incrementing it by one

Note that here we are using the special jinja syntax `contacts|length` to compute the length of the contacts list.

Now lets address the server side implementation.

We need to look for the `page` parameter and pass that through to our model as an integer so the model knows what page of contacts to return:

## Adding Paging To Our Request Handler

```
@app.route("/contacts")
def contacts():
    search = request.args.get("q")
    page = int(request.args.get("page", 1)) ①
    if search is not None:
        contacts_set = Contact.search(search)
    else:
        contacts_set = Contact.all(page) ②
    return render_template("index.html", contacts=contacts_set, page=page)
```

- ① Resolve the page parameter, defaulting to page 1 if no page is passed in
- ② Pass the page through to the model when loading all contacts so it knows which page of 10 contacts to return

This is fairly straightforward: we just need to get another parameter, like the `q` parameter we passed in for searching contacts earlier, convert it to an integer and then pass it through to the `Contact` model so it knows which page to return.

And that's it. We now have a very basic paging mechanism for our web application. And, believe it or not, it is already using AJAX, thanks to our use of `hx-boost` in the application. Easy!

## Click To Load

Now, the current paging mechanism is fine, although it could use some additional polish. But sometimes you don't want to have to page through items and lose your place in the application. In cases like this a different UI pattern might be better. For example, you may want to load the next page *inline* in the current page. This is the common "click to load more" UX pattern:

[screenshot click to load] | *screenshot\_click\_to\_load.png*

Figure 6. A Click To Load UI

Here, you have a button that you can click, and it will load the next set of contacts directly into the page, rather than "paging" to the next page. This allows you to keep the current contacts "in context" visually on the page, but still progress through them as you would in a normal, paged user interface.

Let's see how we can implement this in htmx.

It's actually surprisingly simple: we can just take the existing "Next" link and repurpose it a bit using nothing but htmx attributes!

We want to have a button that, when clicked, appends the rows from the next page of contacts to the current, existing table, rather than re-rendering the whole table. This can be achieved by adding a row to our table that has just such a button in it:

### Changing To "Click To Load"

```
<tbody>
{% for contact in contacts %}
  <tr>
    <td>{{ contact.first }}</td>
    <td>{{ contact.last }}</td>
    <td>{{ contact.phone }}</td>
    <td>{{ contact.email }}</td>
    <td><a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/edit">Edit</a> <a
href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}">View</a></td>
  </tr>
{% endfor %}
{% if contacts|length == 10 %} ❶
  <tr>
    <td colspan="5" style="text-align: center">
      <button hx-target="closest tr" ❷
        hx-swap="outerHTML" ❸
        hx-select="tbody > tr" ❹
        hx-get="/contacts?page={{ page + 1 }}">Load More</button>
    </td>
  </tr>
{% endif %}
</tbody>
```

❶ As with the "Next" link in our paging example, we only show "Load More" if there are 10 contact

results in the current page

- ② In this case, the button needs to target the closest enclosing row, which is what the `closest` syntax allows
- ③ We want to replace this row with the response from the server
- ④ Of course, we don't want to replace the row with the entire response, we only want to replace it with the rows within the table body of the response, so we use the `hx-select` attribute to select those rows out using a standard CSS selector

Believe it or not, that's all we need to change to enable a "Click To Load" style UI! No server side changes are necessary because of the flexibility that htmx gives you with respect to how we process server responses. Pretty cool, eh?

## Relative Positional Targets

Here we saw the first example of a target that was "relatively positioned": `closest tr`. The `closest` keyword indicates that the closest parent that matches the following CSS selector is the target. So in this example the target was the `tr` that was enclosing the button.

htmx also supports `next` and `previous` relative positional expressions, allowing you to target the next element or previous element that matches a given CSS selector.

Relative positional expressions like this are quite powerful and allow you to avoid having to generate `id` attributes in your HTML just so you can target a particular element.

## Infinite Scroll

Another somewhat common pattern for dealing with long lists of things is known as "infinite scroll", where, as the end of a list or table is scrolled into view, more elements are loaded. This behavior makes more sense in situations where a user is exploring a category or series of social media posts, rather than in the context of a contact application, but for completeness we will show how to achieve this in htmx.

We can repurpose the "Click To Load" code to implement this new pattern. If you think about it for a moment, really infinite scroll is just the "Click To Load" logic, but rather than loading when a click occurs, we want to load when an element is "revealed" in the view portal of the browser.

As luck would have it, htmx offers a synthetic (non-standard) DOM event, `revealed` that can be used in tandem with the `hx-trigger` attribute, to trigger a request when, well, when an element is revealed. Let's convert our button to a span and take advantage of this event:

```
{% if contacts|length == 10 %} ❶
    <tr>
        <td colspan="5" style="text-align: center">
            <span<1>hx-target="closest tr"
                hx-trigger="revealed" ❷
                hx-swap="outerHTML"
                hx-select="tbody > tr"
                hx-get="/contacts?page={{ page + 1 }}">Loading More...</span>
        </td>
    </tr>
{% endif %}
```

- ❶ We have converted our element from a button to a span, since the user will not be clicking on it
- ❷ We trigger the request when the element is revealed, that is when it comes into view in the portal

So all we needed to do to convert from "Click to Load" to "Infinite Scroll" was update our element to be a span and add the **revealed** trigger. The fact that this was so easy shows how well htmx generalizes HTML: just a few attributes allow us to dramatically expand what we can achieve with our hypermedia. And, again, I note that we are doing all this within the original, REST-ful model of the web, exchanging hypermedia with the server. As the web was designed!

## 6.6. Summary

- Hypermedia-Driven Applications (HDA) can be made more interactive by using the htmx library.
- A simple and quick way to improve the application is to use the **hx-boost** attribute, which "boosts" all links and forms to use AJAX interactions.
- Deleting a contact can be updated to use the proper **DELETE** HTTP request, using the **hx-delete** attribute.
- Validating the email of a contact as the user entered it can be achieved using a combination of **hx-get** and **hx-target** attributes.
- AJAX-based paging, in addition to the "Click To Load" and "Infinite Scroll" patterns, can be implemented simply and cleanly using htmx.



# Chapter 7. More htmx Patterns

This chapter covers

- Adding the "Active Search" pattern to our application
- Adding the "Lazy Load" pattern to our application
- Implementing inline deletion of contacts from the list view
- Implementing a bulk delete of contacts

## Active Search

So far so good with Contact.app: we have a nice little web application with some significant improvements over a plain HTML-based application. You might be thinking that we've gotten about as much interactivity as the hypermedia approach will allow for without using JavaScript. Is it time wave the white flag and bring out the scripting tools to make any further progress with Contact.app?

Nope, not yet! We still have quite a few interesting and useful interactive UX patterns to add to our application, all of which can be done using good old hypermedia! We *will* eventually add some client-side scripting to our application: hypermedia may be powerful, but it isn't *all* powerful and sometimes scripting might be the best (or only) way to achieve a given user experience. For now, however, let's see what we can accomplish with hypermedia.

The first advanced feature we will create is known as the "Active Search" pattern. Active Search is a feature when, as a user types text into a search box, the results of that search are dynamically updated. This pattern was made popular when Google adopted it for search results, and many applications now implement it.

As you might suspect, we are going to use some of the same techniques we used for dynamically updating emails in the previous chapter, since we are once again going to want to issue requests on the `keyup` event.

## Our Current Search UI

Let's recall what the current search field in our application currently looks like:

*Our Search Form*

```
<form action="/contacts" method="get" class="tool-bar">
  <label for="search">Search Term</label>
  <input id="search" type="search" name="q" value="{{ request.args.get('q') or ''
}}"/> ①
  <input type="submit" value="Search"/>
</form>
```

① The `q` or "query" parameter our client side code uses to search

You will remember that we have some server side code that looks for the `q` parameter and, if it is

present, searches the contacts for that term.

As it stands right now, the user must hit enter when the search input is focused, or click the "Search" button. Both of these events will trigger a `submit` event on the form, causing it to issue an HTTP `GET` and re-rendering the whole page. Currently, thanks to `hx-boost` the form will still use an AJAX request for this `GET`, but we currently don't get the nice search-as-you-type behavior we want.

## Adding Active Search

To add active search behavior, we will need to add a few `htmx` attributes to the search input. We will leave the current form as it is, with an `action` and `method`, so that, in case a user does not have JavaScript enabled, the normal search behavior continues to work. This will make our improvement a nice "progressive enhancement".

Now, in addition to the regular form behavior, we *also* want to issue an HTTP `GET` request when a key up occurs. We want to issue this request to the same URL as the normal form submission. Finally, we only want to do this after a small pause in typing has occurred. Where have we seen that pattern before?

Well, it turns out that this is very similar to the functionality that we needed for email validation isn't it? Indeed it is! We can, in fact, take the `hx-trigger` attribute directly from our email validation example, with its small, 200 millisecond delay to allow a user to stop typing before a request is triggered.

This is a good example of how common patterns come up again and again in `htmx`.

### Adding Active Search Behavior

```
<form action="/contacts" method="get" class="tool-bar">
  <label for="search">Search Term</label>
  <input id="search" type="search" name="q" value="{{ request.args.get('q') or ''
  }}" ❶
      hx-get="/contacts" ❷
      hx-trigger="search, keyup delay:200ms changed"/> ❸
  <input type="submit" value="Search"/>
</form>
```

- ❶ Keep the original attributes, so search will work if JavaScript is not available
- ❷ Issue a `GET` to the same URL as the form
- ❸ Nearly the same `hx-trigger` specification as for the email input validation

The small change that we made to the `hx-trigger` attribute is we switched out the `change` event for the `search` event. The `search` event is triggered when someone clears the search or hits the enter key. It is a non-standard event, but doesn't hurt to include here. The main functionality of the feature is provided by the second triggering event, the `keyup` which, as with the email example, is delayed with the `delay:200ms` modifier to "debounce" the input requests and avoid hammering our server with requests on every `keyup`.

## Targeting The Correct Element

What we have is pretty close to what we want, but recall that the default target for an element is itself. As things currently stand, an HTTP **GET** request will be issued to the `/contacts` path, which will, as of now, return an entire HTML document of search results! This whole document will then be inserted into the *inner* HTML of an input!

Well, that's pretty meaningless: **input** elements aren't allowed to have any HTML inside of them. The browser will, sensibly, just ignore the **htmx** request to do this. So, at this point, when a user types anything into our input, a request will be issued (you can see it in your browser development console) but, unfortunately, it will appear to the user as if nothing has happened at all.

OK, so to fix this issue, what do we want to target with the update instead? Ideally we'd like to just target the actual results: there is no reason to update the header or search input, and that could cause an annoying flash as focus jumps around.

Fortunately the **hx-target** attribute allows us to do exactly that! Lets use it to target the results body, the **tbody** element in the table of contacts:

### *Adding Active Search Behavior*

```
<form action="/contacts" method="get" class="tool-bar">
  <label for="search">Search Term</label>
  <input id="search" type="search" name="q" value="{{ request.args.get('q') or '' }}"
  </input>
  <input type="submit" value="Search"/>
</form>
<table>
  ...
  <tbody>
    ...
  </tbody>
</table>
```

① Target the **tbody** tag on the page

Because there is only one **tbody** on the page, we can use the CSS selector **tbody** and **htmx** will target the first element matching that selector.

Now if you try typing something into the search box, we'll see some results: a request is made and the results are inserted into the document within the **tbody**. Unfortunately, the content that is coming back is still the entire document. So we end up with a "double render" situation, where an entire document has been inserted *inside* another element, with all the navigation, headers and footers and so forth re-rendered within that element. Not good! But, thankfully, pretty easy to fix.

## Paring Down Our Content

Now, we could use the same trick we reached for in the "Click To Load" and "Infinite Scroll" features: the `hx-select` attribute. Recall that the `hx-select` attribute allows us to pick out the part of the response we are interested in using a CSS selector.

So we could add this to our input:

Using `hx-select` for Active Search

```
<input id="search" type="search" name="q" value="{{ request.args.get('q') or '' }}"
      hx-get="/contacts"
      hx-trigger="change, keyup delay:200ms changed"
      hx-target="tbody"
      hx-select="tbody tr"/> ①
```

① Adding an `hx-select` that picks out the table rows in the `tbody` of the response

However, that isn't the only fix for this problem, and, in this case, isn't the most efficient one. Instead, let's change the *server-side* of our Hypermedia Driven Application to serve *only the HTML content needed*.

## HTTP Request Headers In htmx

In this section, we'll look at another, more advanced technique for dealing with a situation where we only want a *partial bit* of HTML, rather than a full document. Currently, we are letting the server create the full HTML document as response and then, on the client side, we filter the HTML down to the bits that we want. This is easy to do, and, in fact, might be necessary if we don't control the server side or can't easily modify responses.

In our application, however, since we are doing "Full Stack" development (that is: we control both the front end *and* the back end code, and can easily modify either) we have another option: we can modify our server responses to return only the content necessary, and remove the need to do client-side filtering. This turns out to be more efficient, since we aren't returning all the content surrounding the bit we are interested in, saving bandwidth as well as CPU time on the server side. So let's take this opportunity to explore returning different HTML content, based on the context information that htmx provides with the HTTP requests it makes.

Here's a look again at the current server side code for our search logic:

Server Side Search

```
@app.route("/contacts")
def contacts():
    search = request.args.get("q")
    if search is not None:
        contacts_set = Contact.search(search) ①
    else:
        contacts_set = Contact.all()
    return render_template("index.html", contacts=contacts_set) ②
```

- ① This is where the search logic happens
- ② We simply rerender the `index.html` template every time, no matter what

So how do we want to change this? Well, we want to render two different bits of HTML content *conditionally*:

- If this is a "normal" request for the entire page, we want to render the `index.html` template in the current manner. In fact, we don't want anything to change if this is a "normal" request.
- However, if this is an "Active Search" request, we only want to render just the content that is within the `tbody`, that is, just the table rows of the page.

So we need some way to determine exactly which of these two different types of requests to the `/contact` URL is being made, in order to know exactly which content we want to render.

It turns out that htmx helps us distinguish between these two cases by including a number of HTTP *Request Headers* when it makes requests. Request Headers are a feature of HTTP, allowing clients (e.g. web browsers) to include name/value pairs of metadata associated with requests to help the server understand what the client is requesting. Here is an example of (some of) the headers the Firefox browser issues when requesting <https://manning.com>:

#### HTTP Headers

```
GET / HTTP/2
Host: www.manning.com
User-Agent: Mozilla/5.0 (Macintosh; Intel Mac OS X 10.15; rv:103.0) Gecko/20100101
Firefox/103.0
Accept:
text/html,application/xhtml+xml,application/xml;q=0.9,image/avif,image/webp,*/*;q=0.8
Accept-Language: en-US,en;q=0.5
Accept-Encoding: gzip, deflate, br
DNT: 1
Connection: keep-alive
Cookie: ...
Upgrade-Insecure-Requests: 1
Sec-Fetch-Dest: document
Sec-Fetch-Mode: navigate
Sec-Fetch-Site: none
Sec-Fetch-User: ?1
Sec-GPC: 1
TE: trailers
```

htmx takes advantage of this feature of HTTP to add additional headers and, therefore, additional *context* to the HTTP requests that it makes, so that you can inspect those headers and make smarter decisions with respect to exactly what logic you want to execute, and what sort of response you want to send to the client.

Here is a table of the HTTP headers that htmx includes in HTTP requests:

Header	Description
HX-Boosted	This will be the string "true" if the request is made via an element using hx-boost
HX-Current-URL	This will be the current URL of the browser
HX-History-Restore-Request	This will be the string "true" if the request is for history restoration after a miss in the local history cache
HX-Prompt	This will contain the user response to an hx-prompt
HX-Request	This value is always "true" for htmx-based requests
HX-Target	This value will be the id of the target element if it exists
HX-Trigger-Name	This value will be the name of the triggered element if it exists
HX-Trigger	This value will be the id of the triggered element if it exists

Looking through this list of headers, the last one stands out: we have an id, `search` on our search input. So the value of the `HX-Trigger` header should be set to `search` when the request is coming from the search input, which has the id `search`. Perfect!

Let's add some conditional logic to our controller to look for that header and, if the value is `search`, we render only the rows rather than the whole `index.html` template:

#### Updating Our Server Side Search

```
@app.route("/contacts")
def contacts():
    search = request.args.get("q")
    if search is not None:
        contacts_set = Contact.search(search)
        if request.headers.get('HX-Trigger') == 'search': ❶
            # TODO: render only the rows here ❷
    else:
        contacts_set = Contact.all()
    return render_template("index.html", contacts=contacts_set) ❷
```

❶ If the request header `HX-Trigger` is equal to "search", we want to do something different

❷ We need to learn how to render just the table rows

Next, let's look at how we can render only those rows.

## Factoring Your Templates

Here we come to a common pattern in htmx: we want to *factor* our server side templates. This means that we want to break them up a bit so they can be called from multiple contexts. In this situation, we want to break the rows of the results table out to a separate template. We will call this new template `rows.html` and we will include it from the main `index.html` template, as well as render it directly in the controller when we want to respond with only the rows to Active Search requests.

Recall what the table in our `index.html` file currently looks like:

### *The Contacts Table*

```
<table>
  <thead>
    <tr>
      <th>First</th> <th>Last</th> <th>Phone</th> <th>Email</th> <th></th>
    </tr>
  </thead>
  <tbody>
    {% for contact in contacts %}
      <tr>
        <td>{{ contact.first }}</td>
        <td>{{ contact.last }}</td>
        <td>{{ contact.phone }}</td>
        <td>{{ contact.email }}</td>
        <td><a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/edit">Edit</a>
          <a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}">View</a></td>
      </tr>
    {% endfor %}
  </tbody>
</table>
```

Now, it is the `for` loop in this template that produces all the rows in the final content generated by `index.html`. So, what we want to do is to move the `for` loop and, therefore, the rows it creates out to a *separate template* so that only that little bit of HTML can be rendered independently from `index.html`.

Let's call this new template `rows.html`:

```
{% for contact in contacts %} ②
    <tr>
        <td>{{ contact.first }}</td>
        <td>{{ contact.last }}</td>
        <td>{{ contact.phone }}</td>
        <td>{{ contact.email }}</td>
        <td><a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/edit">Edit</a>
            <a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}">View</a></td>
    </tr>
{% endfor %}
```

Using this template we can render only the `tr` elements for a given collection of contacts.

Now, of course, we still want to include this content in the `index.html` template: we are *sometimes* going to be rendering the entire page, and sometimes only rendering the rows. In order to keep `index.html` rendering properly, we can include the `rows.html` template by using the Jinja2 `include` directive at the position we want the content from `rows.html` inserted:

#### Including The New File

```
<table>
    <thead>
        <tr>
            <th>First</th>
            <th>Last</th>
            <th>Phone</th>
            <th>Email</th>
            <th></th>
        </tr>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
        {% include 'rows.html' %} ①
    </tbody>
</table>
```

① This directive "includes" the `rows.html` file, inserting its content into the current template

So far, so good: the `/contacts` page still rendering properly, just as it did before we split the rows out of the `index.html` template.

## Using Our New Template

The last step in factoring our templates is to modify our web controller to take advantage of the new `rows.html` template when it responds to an active search request.

Since `rows.html` is just another template, just like `index.html`, all we need to do is call the `render_template` function `rows.html` rather than `index.html`, and we will render *only* the row content rather than the entire page:



```
@app.route("/contacts")
def contacts():
    search = request.args.get("q")
    if search is not None:
        contacts_set = Contact.search(search)
        if request.headers.get('HX-Trigger') == 'search':
            return render_template("rows.html", contacts=contacts_set) ①
    else:
        contacts_set = Contact.all()
    return render_template("index.html", contacts=contacts_set)
```

① Render the new template in the case of an active search

Now, when an Active Search request is made, rather than getting an entire HTML document back, we only get a partial bit of HTML, the table rows for the contacts that match the search. These rows are then inserted into the `tbody` on the index page, without any need for an `hx-select` or any other client side processing.

And, as a bonus, the old form-based search still works as well, thanks to the fact that we conditionally render the rows only when the `search` input issues the HTTP request. Great!

## HTTP Headers & Caching

One subtle aspect of the approach we are taking here, using headers to determine the content of what we return, is a feature baked into HTTP: caching. In our request handler, we are now returning different content depending on the value of the `HX-Trigger` header. If we were to use HTTP Caching, we might get into a situation where someone makes a *non-htmx* request (e.g. refreshing a page) and yet the *htmx* content is returned from the HTTP cache, resulting in a partial page of content for the user.

The solution to this problem is to use the HTTP Response `Vary` header and call out the `htmx` headers that you are using to determine what content you are returning. A full treatment of HTTP Caching is beyond the scope of this book, but the MDN article on the topic is quite good: <https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/HTTP/Caching>

## Updating The Navigation Bar With `hx-push-url`

You may have noticed one shortcoming of our Active Search when compared with submitting the form: when you submit the form it will update the navigation bar of the browser to include the search term. So, for example, if you search for "joe" in the search box, you will end up with a url that looks like this in your browser's nav bar:

<https://example.com/contacts?q=joe>

This is a nice feature of browsers: it allows you to bookmark the search or to copy the URL and send it to someone else. All they have to do is to click on the link, and they will repeat the exact same search. This is also tied in with the browser's notion of history: if you click the back button it will

take you to the previous URL that you came from. If you submit two searches and want to go back to the first one, you can simply hit back and the browser will "return" to that search. (It may use a cached version of the search rather than issuing another request, but that's a longer story.)

As it stands right now, during Active Search, we are not updating the browser's navigation bar, so you aren't getting nice copy-and-pasteable links and you aren't getting history entries, so no back button support. Fortunately, htmx provides a way for doing this, the `hx-push-url` attribute.

The `hx-push-url` attribute lets you tell htmx "Please push the URL of this request into the browser's navigation bar". Push might seem like an odd verb to use here, but that's the term that the underlying browser history API uses, which stems from the fact that it models browser history as a "stack" of locations: when you go to a new location, that location is "pushed" onto the stack of history elements, and when you click "back", that location is "popped" off the history stack.

So, to get proper history support for our Active Search, all we need to do is to set the `hx-push-url` attribute to `true`. Let's update our search input:

#### *Updating The URL During Active Search*

```
<input id="search" type="search" name="q" value="{{ request.args.get('q') or '' }}"
      hx-get="/contacts"
      hx-trigger="change, keyup delay:200ms changed"
      hx-target="tbody"
      hx-push-url="true"/> ①
```

① By adding the `hx-push-url` attribute with the value `true`, htmx will update the URL when it makes a request

That's all it takes and now, as Active Search requests are sent, the URL in the browser's navigation bar is updated to have the proper query in it, just like when the form is submitted!

Now, you might not *want* this behavior. You might feel it would be confusing to users to see the navigation bar updated and have history entries for every Active Search made, for example. That's fine! You can simply omit the `hx-push-url` attribute and it will go back to the behavior you want. htmx tries to be flexible enough that you can achieve the UX you want, while staying within the declarative HTML model.

## **Adding A Request Indicator**

A final touch for our Active Search pattern is to add a request indicator to let the user know that a search is in progress. As it stands the user has to know that the active search functionality is doing a request implicitly and, if the search takes a bit, may end up thinking that the feature isn't working. By adding a request indicator we let the user know that the hypermedia application is busy and they can wait (hopefully not too long!) for the request to complete.

htmx provides support for request indicators via the `hx-indicator` attribute. This attribute takes, you guessed it, a CSS selector that points to the indicator for a given element. The indicator can be anything, but it is typically some sort of animated image, such as a gif or svg file, that spins or otherwise communicates visually that "something is happening".

Let's add a spinner after our search input:

#### Updating The URL During Active Search

```
<input id="search" type="search" name="q" value="{{ request.args.get('q') or '' }}"
      hx-get="/contacts"
      hx-trigger="change, keyup delay:200ms changed"
      hx-target="tbody"
      hx-push-url="true"
      hx-indicator="#spinner"/> ①
 ②
```

① The `hx-indicator` attribute points to the indicator image after the input

② The indicator is a spinning circle svg file, and has the `htmx-indicator` class on it

We have added the spinner right after the input. This visually co-locates the request indicator with the element making the request, and makes it easy for a user to see that something is in fact happening.

Note that the indicator `img` tag has the `htmx-indicator` class on it. `htmx-indicator` is a CSS class that is automatically injected into the page by htmx. This class sets the default `opacity` of an element to `0`, which hides the element from view, while at the same time not disrupting the layout of the page.

When an htmx request is triggered that points to this indicator, another class, `htmx-request` is added to the indicator which transitions its opacity to `1`. So you can use just about anything as an indicator, and it will be hidden by default, and then, when a request is in flight, will be shown. This is all done via standard CSS classes, allowing you to control the transitions and even the mechanism by which the indicator is shown (e.g. you might use `display` rather than `opacity`). htmx is flexible in this regard.

### Use Request Indicators!

Request indicators are an important UX aspect of any distributed application. It is unfortunate that browsers have de-emphasized their native request indicators over time, and it is doubly unfortunate that request indicators are not part of the JavaScript ajax APIs.

Be sure not to neglect this significant aspect of your application! Even though requests might seem instant when you are working on your application locally, in the real world they can take quite a bit longer due to network latency. It's often a good idea to take advantage of browser developer tools that allow you to throttle your local browsers response times. This will give you a better idea of what real world users are seeing, and show you where indicators might help users understand exactly what is going on.

So there we go: we now have a pretty darned sophisticated user experience built out when compared with plain HTML, but we've built it all as a hypermedia-driven feature, no JSON or JavaScript to be seen! This particular implementation also has the benefit of being a progressive enhancement, so this aspect of our application will continue to work for clients that don't have

JavaScript enabled. Pretty slick!

## 7.1. Lazy Loading

With Active Search behind us, let's move on to a very different sort of problem, that of lazy loading. Lazy loading is when the loading of something is deferred until later, when needed. This is commonly used as a performance enhancement: you avoid the processing resources necessary to produce some data until that data is actually needed.

Let's add a count of the total number of contacts below the bottom of our contacts table. This will give us a potentially expensive operation that we can use to demonstrate how easy it is to add lazy loading to our application using htmx.

First let's update our server code in the `/contacts` request handler to get a count of the total number of contacts. We will pass that count through to the template to render some new HTML.

### *Adding A Count To The UI*

```
@app.route("/contacts")
def contacts():
    search = request.args.get("q")
    page = int(request.args.get("page", 1))
    count = Contact.count() ①
    if search is not None:
        contacts_set = Contact.search(search)
        if request.headers.get('HX-Trigger') == 'search':
            return render_template("rows.html", contacts=contacts_set, page=page,
count=count)
    else:
        contacts_set = Contact.all(page)
        return render_template("index.html", contacts=contacts_set, page=page,
count=count) ②
```

① Get the total count of contacts from the Contact model

② Pass the count out to the `index.html` template to use when rendering

As with the rest of the application, in the interest of staying focused on the *hypermedia* part of Contact.app, we are not going to look into the details of how `Contact.count()` works. We just need to know that:

- It returns the total count of contacts in the contact database
- It may potentially be slow

Next let's add some HTML to our `index.html` that takes advantage of this new bit of data, showing a message next to the "Add Contact" link with the total count of users. Here is what our HTML looks like:

```
<p>
  <a href="/contacts/new">Add Contact</a> <span>({{ count }} total
Contacts)</span>①
</p>
```

① A simple span with some text showing the total number of contacts.

Well that was easy, wasn't it? Now our users will see the total number of contacts next to the link to add new contacts, to give them a sense of how large the contact database is. This sort of rapid development is one of the joys of developing web applications the old way.

Here is what the feature looks like in our application:

[screenshot total contacts] | *screenshot\_total\_contacts.png*

Figure 7. Total Contact Count Display

Beautiful.

Of course, as you probably suspected, all it not perfect. Unfortunately, upon shipping this feature to production, we start getting some complaints from the users that the application "feels slow". So, like all good developers faced with a performance issues, rather than guessing what the issue might be, we try to get a performance profile of the application to see what exactly is causing the problem.

It turns out, surprisingly, that the problem is that innocent looking `Contacts.count()` call, which is taking up to a second and a half to complete. Unfortunately, for reasons beyond the scope of this book, it is not possible to improve that load time, nor it is also not possible to cache the result. This leaves us with two choices:

- Remove the feature
- Come up with some other way to mitigate the performance issue

Let's assume that we can't remove the feature, and therefore look at how we can mitigate this performance issue by using htmx instead.

## Pulling The Expensive Code Out

The first step in implementing the Lazy Load pattern is to pull the expensive code, that is, the call to `Contacts.count()`. out of request handler for the `/contacts` end point.

Let's pull this function call into its own HTTP request handler as new HTTP end point that we will put at `/contacts/count`. For this new end point, we won't need to render a template at all: its sole job is going to be to render that small bit of text that is in the span, "(22 total Contacts)"

Here is what the new code will look like:

```
@app.route("/contacts")
def contacts():
    search = request.args.get("q")
    page = int(request.args.get("page", 1)) ①
    if search is not None:
        contacts_set = Contact.search(search)
        if request.headers.get('HX-Trigger') == 'search':
            return render_template("rows.html", contacts=contacts_set, page=page)
    else:
        contacts_set = Contact.all(page)
    return render_template("index.html", contacts=contacts_set, page=page) ②

@app.route("/contacts/count")
def contacts_count():
    count = Contact.count() ③
    return "(" + str(count) + " total Contacts)" ④
```

- ① We no longer call `Contact.count()` in this handler
- ② `count` is no longer passed out to the template to render in the `/contacts` handler
- ③ We create a new handler at the `/contacts/count` path that does the expensive calculation
- ④ Return the string with the total number of contacts in it

Great! So now we have moved the performance issue out of the `/contacts` handler code and created a new HTTP end point that will produce the expensive-to-create count for us.

Now we need to get the content from this new handler *into* the span, somehow. As we said earlier, the default behavior of htmx is to place any content it receives for a given request into the `innerHTML` of an element, and that turns out to be exactly what we want here: we want to retrieve this text and put it into the `span`. So we can simply place an `hx-get` attribute on the span, pointing to this new path, and do exactly that.

However, recall that the default *event* that will trigger a request for a `span` element in htmx is the `click` event. Well, that's not what we want! Instead, we want this request to trigger immediately, when the page loads. To do this, we can add the `hx-trigger` attribute to update the trigger of the requests for the element, and use the `load` event.

The `load` event is a special event that htmx triggers on all content when it is loaded into the DOM. By setting `hx-trigger` to `load`, we will cause htmx to issue the `GET` request when the `span` element is loaded into the page.

Here is our updated template code:

```
<p>
  <a href="/contacts/new">Add Contact</a> <span hx-get="/contacts/count" hx-
trigger="load"</span>①
</p>
```

① Issue a **GET** to **/contacts/count** when the **load** event occurs

Note that the **span** starts empty: we have removed the content from it, and we are allowing the request to **/contacts/count** to populate it instead.

And, check it out, our **/contacts** page is fast again! When you navigate to the page it feels very snappy and profiling shows that yes, indeed, the page is loading much more quickly. Why is that? Well, we've deferred the expensive calculation to a secondary request, allowing the initial request to finish loading much more quickly.

You might say "OK, great, but it's still taking a second or two to get the total count on the page." That's true, but often the user may not be particularly interested in the total count. They may just want to come to the page and search for an existing user, or perhaps they may want to edit or add a user. The total count is often just a "nice to have" bit of information in these cases. By deferring the calculation of the count in this manner we let users get on with their use of the application while we perform the expensive calculation.

Yes, the total time to get all the information on the screen takes just as long. (It actually might be a bit longer since we now have two requests that need to get all the information.) But the *perceived performance* for the end user will be much better: they can do what they want nearly immediately, even if some information isn't available instantaneously. Lazy Loading is a great tool to have in your tool belt when optimizing your web application performance!

## Adding An Indicator

Unfortunately there is one somewhat disconcerting aspect to our current implementation: the count is lazily loaded, but there is no way for a user to know that this computation is being done. As it stands, the count just sort of bursts onto the scene whenever the request to **/contacts/count** completes.

That's not ideal. What we want is an indicator, like we added to our active search example. And, in fact, we can simply reuse the same spinner image here!

Now, in this case, we have a one-time request and, once the request is over, we are not going to need the spinner anymore. So it doesn't make sense to use the exact same approach we did with the active search example. Recall that in that case we placed a spinner *after* the span and using the **hx-indicator** attribute to point to it.

In this case, since the spinner is only used once, we can put it *inside* the content of the span. When the request completes the content in the response will be placed inside the span, replacing the spinner with the computed contact count. It turns out that **htmx** allows you to place indicators with the **htmx-indicator** class on them inside of elements that issue **htmx**-powered requests. In the absence of an **hx-indicator** attribute, these internal indicators will be shown when a request is in



flight.

So let's add that spinner from the active search example as the initial content in our span:

#### *Adding An Indicator To Our Lazily Loaded Content*

```
<span hx-get="/contacts/count" hx-trigger="load">  
  ①  
</span>
```

① Yep, that's it

Great! Now when the user loads the page, rather than having the total contact count sprung on them like a surprise, there is a nice spinner indicating that something is coming. Much better!

Note that all we had to do was copy and paste our indicator from the active search example into the **span**! This is a great demonstration of how htmx provides flexible, composable features and building blocks to work with: implementing a new feature is often just a copy-and-paste, with maybe a tweak or two, and you are done.

### **But That's Not Lazy!**

You might say "OK, but that's not really lazy. We are still loading the count immediately when the page is loaded, we are just doing it in a second request. You aren't really waiting until the value is actually needed."

Fine. Let's make it *lazy* lazy: we'll only issue the request when the **span** scrolls into view.

To do that, let's recall how we set up the infinite scroll example: we used the **revealed** event for our trigger. That's all we want here, right? When the element is revealed we issue the request?

Yep, that's it! Once again, we can mix and match concepts across various UX patterns to come up with solutions to new problems in htmx.

#### *Making It Lazy Lazy*

```
<span hx-get="/contacts/count" hx-trigger="revealed"> ①  
    
</span>
```

① Change the **hx-trigger** to **revealed**

Now we have a truly lazy implementation, deferring the expensive computation until we are absolutely sure we need it. A pretty cool trick, and, again, a simple one-attribute change demonstrates the flexibility of both htmx the hypermedia approach.

## **7.2. Inline Delete**

We now have some pretty slick UX patterns in our application, but let's not rest on our laurels. For our next hypermedia trick, we are going to implement "inline delete", where a contact can be



deleted directly from the list view of all contacts, rather than requiring the user to navigate all the way to the edit view of particular contact, in order to access the "Delete Contact" button.

We already have "Edit" and "View" links for each row, in the `rows.html` template:

#### *The Existing Row Actions*

```
<td>
  <a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/edit">Edit</a>
  <a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}">View</a>
</td>
```

We want to add a "Delete" link as well. And we want that link to act an awful lot like the "Delete Contact" from `edit.html`, don't we? We'd like to issue an HTTP `DELETE` to the URL for the given contact, we want a confirmation dialog to ensure the user doesn't accidentally delete a contact. Here is the "Delete Contact" html:

#### *The Existing Row Actions*

```
<button hx-delete="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}"
        hx-push-url="true"
        hx-confirm="Are you sure you want to delete this contact?"
        hx-target="body">
  Delete Contact
</button>
```

Is this going to be another copy-and-paste job with a bit of tweaking?

It sure is!

One thing to note is that, in the case of the "Delete Contact" button, we want to rerender the whole screen and update the URL, since we are going to be returning from the edit view for the contact to the list view of all contacts. In the case of this link, however, we are already on the list of contacts, so there is no need to update the URL, and we can omit the `hx-push-url` attribute.

Here is our updated code:

#### *The Existing Row Actions*

```
<td>
  <a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/edit">Edit</a>
  <a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}">View</a>
  <a href="#" hx-delete="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}"
        hx-confirm="Are you sure you want to delete this contact?"
        hx-target="body">Delete</a> ①
</td>
```

① Almost a straight copy of the "Delete Contact" button

As you can see, we have added a new anchor tag and given it a blank target (the `#` value in its `href`

attribute) to retain the correct mouse-over styling behavior of the link. We've also copied the `hx-delete`, `hx-confirm` and `hx-target` attributes from the "Delete Contact" button, but omitted the `hx-push-url` attributes since we don't want to update the URL of the browser.

And... that's it! We now have inline delete working, even with a confirmation dialog!

## A Style Sidebar

One thing is really starting to bother me about our application: we now have quite a few actions stacking up in our contacts table, and it is starting to look very distracting:

[screenshot stacked actions] | *screenshot\_stacked\_actions.png*

*Figure 8. That's a Lot of Actions*

It would be nice if we didn't show the actions all in a row, and it would be nice if we only showed the actions when the user indicated interest in a given row. We will return to this problem after we look at the relationship between scripting and a Hypermedia Driven Application in a later chapter.

For now, let's just tolerate this less-than-ideal user interface, knowing that we will return to it later.

## Getting Fancy

We can get even fancier here, however. What if, rather than re-rendering the whole page, we just removed the row for the contact? The user is looking at the row anyway, so is there really a need to re-render the whole page?

To do this, we'll need to do a couple of things:

- We'll need to update this link to target the row that it is in
- We'll need to change the swap to `outerHTML`, since we want to replace (really, remove) the entire row
- We'll need to update the server side to render empty content when the `DELETE` is issued from a row rather than from the "Delete Contact" button on the contact edit page

First things first, update the target of our "Delete" link to be the row that the link is in, rather than the entire body. We can once again take advantage of the relative positional `closest` feature to target the closest `tr`, like we did in our "Click To Load" and "Infinite Scroll" features:

```
<td>
  <a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/edit">Edit</a>
  <a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}">View</a>
  <a href="#" hx-delete="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}"
    hx-swap="outerHTML"
    hx-confirm="Are you sure you want to delete this contact?"
    hx-target="closest tr">Delete</a> ❶
</td>
```

❶ Updated to target the closest enclosing `tr` (table row) of the link

## Updating The Server Side

Now we need to update the server side as well. We want to keep the "Delete Contact" button working as well, and in that case the current logic is correct. So we'll need some way to differentiate between `DELETE` requests that are triggered by the button and `DELETE` requests that come from this anchor.

The cleanest way to do this is to add an `id` attribute to the "Delete Contact" button, so that we can inspect the `HX-Trigger` HTTP Request header to determine if the delete button was the cause of the request. This is a simple change to the existing HTML:

*Adding an `id` to the "Delete Contact" button*

```
<button id="delete-btn" ❶
  hx-delete="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}"
  hx-push-url="true"
  hx-confirm="Are you sure you want to delete this contact?"
  hx-target="body">
  Delete Contact
</button>
```

❶ An `id` attribute has been added to the button

By giving this button an `id` attribute, we now have a mechanism for differentiating between the delete button in the `edit.html` template and the delete links in the `rows.html` template. When this button issues a request, it will now look something like this:

```
DELETE http://example.org/contacts/42 HTTP/1.1
Accept: text/html,*/*
Host: example.org
...
HX-Trigger: delete-btn
...
```

You can see that the request now includes the `id` of the button. This allows us to write code very similar to what we did for the active search pattern, using a conditional on the `HX-Trigger` header to

determine what we want to do. If that header has the value `delete-btn`, then we know the request came from the button on the edit page, and we can do what we are currently doing: delete the contact and redirect to `/contacts` page.

If it *does not* have that value, then we can simply delete the contact and return an empty string. This empty string will replace the target, in this case the row for the given contact, thereby removing the row from the UI.

Let's refactor our server side code to do this:

#### *Updating Our Server Code To Handle Two Different Delete Patterns*

```
@app.route("/contacts/<contact_id>", methods=["DELETE"])
def contacts_delete(contact_id=0):
    contact = Contact.find(contact_id)
    contact.delete()
    if request.headers.get('HX-Trigger') == 'delete-btn': ❶
        flash("Deleted Contact!")
        return redirect("/contacts", 303)
    else:
        return "" ❷
```

❶ If the delete button on the edit page submitted this request, then continue to do the logic we had previous

❷ If not, simply return an empty string, which will delete the row

Believe it or not, we are now done: when a user clicks "Delete" on a contact row and confirms the delete, the row will disappear from the UI. Poof! Once again, we have a situation where just changing a few lines of simple code gives us a dramatically different behavior. Hypermedia is very powerful!

## **Getting Super Fancy With The htmx Swapping Model**

This is pretty cool, but there is another improvement we can make if we take some time to understand the htmx content swapping model: it sure would be exciting if, rather than just instantly deleting the row, we faded it out before we removed it. That easement makes it more obvious that the row is being removed, giving the user some nice visual feedback on the deletion.

It turns out we can do this pretty easily with htmx, but to do so we'll need to dig in to exactly how htmx swaps content.

## The htmx Swapping Model

You might think that htmx simply puts the new content into the DOM, but that's not in fact how it works. Instead, content goes through a series of steps as it is added to the DOM:

- When content is received and about to be swapped into the DOM, the `htmx-swapping` CSS class is added to the target element
- A small delay then occurs (we will discuss why this delay exists in a moment)
- Next, the `htmx-swapping` class is removed from the target and the `htmx-settling` class is added
- The new content is swapped into the DOM
- Another small delay occurs
- Finally, the `htmx-settling` class is removed from the target

There is more to the swap mechanic (settling, for example, is a more advanced topic that we will discuss in a later chapter) but for now this is all you need to know about it.

Now, there are small delays in the process here, typically on the order of a few milliseconds. Why so? It turns out that these small delays allow *CSS transitions* to occur.

CSS transitions are a technology that allow you to animate a transition from one style to another. So, for example, if you changed the height of something from 10 pixels to 20 pixels, by using a CSS transition you can make the element smoothly animate to the new height. These sorts of animations are fun, often increase application usability, and are a great mechanism to add polish and fit-and-finish to your web application.

Unfortunately, CSS transitions are not available in plain HTML: you have to use JavaScript and add or remove classes to get them to trigger. This is why the htmx swap model is more complicated than you might initially think: by swapping in classes and adding small delays, you can access CSS transitions purely within HTML, without needing to write any JavaScript!

### Taking Advantage of `htmx-swapping`

OK, so, let's go back and look at our inline delete mechanic: we click an htmx enhanced link which deletes the contact and then swaps some empty content in for the row. We know that, before the `tr` element is removed, it will have the `htmx-swapping` class added to it. We can take advantage of that to write a CSS transition that fades the opacity of the row to 0. Here is what that CSS looks like:

#### *Adding A Fade Out Transition*

```
tr.htmx-swapping { ❶
  opacity: 0; ❷
  transition: opacity 1s ease-out; ❸
}
```

- ❶ We want this style to apply to `tr` elements with the `htmx-swapping` class on them

- ② The `opacity` will be 0, making it invisible
- ③ The `opacity` will transition to 0 over a 1 second time period, using the `ease-out` function

Again, this is not a CSS book and I am not going to go deeply into the details of CSS transitions, but hopefully the above makes sense to you, even if this is the first time you've seen CSS transitions.

So, think about what this means from the htmx swapping model: when htmx gets content back to swap into the row it will put the `htmx-swapping` class on the row and wait a bit. This will allow the transition to a zero opacity to occur, fading the row out. Then the new (empty) content will be swapped in, which will effectively removing the row.

Sounds good, and we are nearly there. There is one more thing we need to do: the default "swap delay" for htmx is very short, a few milliseconds. That makes sense in most cases: you don't want to have much of a delay before you put the new content into the DOM. But, in this case, we want to give the CSS animation time to complete before we do the swap, we want to give it a second, in fact.

Fortunately htmx has an option for the `hx-swap` annotation that allows you to set the swap delay: following the swap type you can add `swap:` followed by a timing value to tell htmx to wait a specific amount of time before it swaps. Let's update our HTML to allow a one second delay before the swap is done for the delete action:

#### *The Existing Row Actions*

```
<td>
  <a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/edit">Edit</a>
  <a href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}">View</a>
  <a href="#" hx-delete="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}"
    hx-swap="outerHTML swap:1s" ①
    hx-confirm="Are you sure you want to delete this contact?"
    hx-target="closest tr">Delete</a>
</td>
```

- ① A swap delay changes how long htmx waits before it swaps in new content

With this modification, the existing row will stay in the DOM for an additional second, with the `htmx-swapping` class on it. This will give the row time to transition to an opacity of zero, giving the fade out effect we want.

Now, when a user clicks on a "Delete" link and confirms the delete, the row will slowly fade out and then, once it has faded to a 0 opacity, it will be removed. Fancy! And all done in a declarative, hypermedia oriented manner, no JavaScript required! (Well, obviously htmx is written in JavaScript, but you know what I mean: we didn't have to write any JavaScript to implement the feature!)

## 7.3. Bulk Delete

Our final feature in this chapter is going to be a "Bulk Delete" feature. The current mechanism for deleting users is nice, but it would be annoying if a user wanted to delete five or ten contacts at a time, wouldn't it? For the bulk delete feature, we'll add the ability to select rows via a checkbox

input and delete them all in a single go by clicking a "Delete Selected Contacts" button.

To get started with this feature, we'll need to add a checkbox input to each row in the `rows.html` template. This input will have the name `contacts` and its value will be the `id` of the contact for the current row. Here is what the updated code for `rows.html` looks like:

#### *Adding A Checkbox To Each Row*

```
{% for contact in contacts %}
<tr>
  <td><input type="checkbox" name="selected_contact_ids" value="{{ contact.id
  }}"></td> ❶
  <td>{{ contact.first }}</td>
  ... omitted
</tr>
{% endfor %}
```

❶ A new cell with the checkbox input whose value is set to the current contact's id

We'll also need to add an empty column in the header for the table to accommodate the checkbox column. With that done we now get a series of check boxes, one for each row, a pattern no doubt familiar to you from the web:

[screenshot checkboxes] | *screenshot\_checkboxes.png*

*Figure 9. Checkboxes For Our Contact Rows*

If you are not familiar with or have forgotten the way checkboxes work in HTML: a checkbox will submit its value associated with the name of the input if and only if it is checked. So if, for example, you checked the contacts with the ids 3, 7 and 9, then those three values would all be submitted to the server. Since all the checkboxes in this case have the same name, `contacts`, all three values would be submitted with the name `contacts`.

## The "Delete Selected Contacts" button

The next step is to add a button below the table that will delete all the selected contacts. We want this button, like our delete links in each row, to issue an HTTP `DELETE`, but rather than issuing it to the URL for a given contact, like we do with the inline delete links and with the delete button on the edit page, here we want to issue the delete to the `/contacts` URL. As with the other delete elements, we want to confirm that the user wishes to delete the contacts, and, for this case, we are going to target the body of page, since we are going to rerender the whole table.

Here is what the template code looks like:

### *The Delete Selected Contacts Button.*

```
<button hx-delete="/contacts" ❶  
      hx-confirm="Are you sure you want to delete these contacts?" ❷  
      hx-target="body"> ❸  
  Delete Selected Contacts  
</button>
```

❶ Issue a **DELETE** to **/contacts**

❷ Confirm that the user wants to delete the selected contacts

❸ Target the body

Great, pretty easy. One question though: how are we going to include the values of all the selected checkboxes in the request? As it stands right now, this is just a stand-alone button, and it doesn't have any information indicating that it should include any other information. Fortunately, htmx has a few different ways to include values of inputs with a request.

One way would be to use the **hx-include** attribute, which allows you to use a CSS selector to specify the elements you want to include in the request. That would work fine here, but we are going to use another approach that is a bit simpler in this case. By default, if an element is a child of a **form** element, htmx will include all the values of inputs within that form. In situations like this, where there is a bulk operation for a table, it is common to enclose the whole table in a form tag, so that it is easy to add buttons that operate on the selected items.

Let's add that form tag around the form, and be sure to enclose the button in it as well:

### *The Delete Selected Contacts Button.*

```
<form> ❶  
  <table>  
    ... omitted  
  </table>  
  <button hx-delete="/contacts"  
        hx-confirm="Are you sure you want to delete these contacts?"  
        hx-target="body">  
    Delete Selected Contacts  
  </button>  
</form> ❷
```

❶ The form tag encloses the entire table

❷ And also encloses the button

Now, when the button issues a **DELETE**, it will include all the contact ids that have been selected as the **selected\_contact\_ids** request variable. Great!

## **The Server Side for Delete Selected Contacts**

The server side implementation is going to look an awful lot like our original server side code for deleting a contact. In fact, once again, we can just copy and paste, and fix a bit of stuff up:



- We want to change the URL to `/contacts`
- We want the handler to get *all* the ids submitted as `selected_contact_ids` and iterate over each one, deleting the given contact

Those are really the only changes we need to make! Here is what the server side code looks like:

*The Delete Selected Contacts Button.*

```
@app.route("/contacts/", methods=["DELETE"]) ①
def contacts_delete_all():
    contact_ids = list(map(int, request.form.getlist("selected_contact_ids"))) ②
    for contact_id in contact_ids: ③
        contact = Contact.find(contact_id)
        contact.delete() ④
    flash("Deleted Contacts!") ⑤
    contacts_set = Contact.all()
    return render_template("index.html", contacts=contacts_set)
```

- ① We handle a `DELETE` request to the `/contacts/` path
- ② We convert the `selected_contact_ids` values submitted to the server from a list of strings to a list integers
- ③ We iterate over all of the ids
- ④ And delete the given contact with each id
- ⑤ Beyond that, it's the same code as our original delete handler: flash a message and render the `index.html` template

So, as you can see, we just took the original delete logic and slightly modified it to deal with an array of ids, rather than a single id. Readers with sharp eyes might notice one other small change: we did away with the redirect that was in the original delete code. We did so because we are already on the page we want to rerender, so there is no reason to redirect and have the URL update to something new. We can just rerender the page, and the new list of contacts (sans the contacts that were deleted) will be re-rendered.

And there we go, we now have a bulk delete feature for our application. Once again, not a huge amount of code, and we are implementing these features entirely by exchanging hypermedia with a server in the traditional, RESTful manner of the web. Cool!

## 7.4. Summary

- In this chapter dove into some more advanced user interface features using htmx and hypermedia
- We implemented a nifty "Active Search" feature, allowing users to type and immediately filter down the contacts list
- We then introduced and fixed a performance issue by using the "Lazy Loading" pattern, which defers a calculation until after the initial request for better perceived performance
- Next we implemented an "Inline Delete" feature that allows users to delete contacts directly

from the list view, complete with a nice fade out effect

- Finally, we implemented a "Bulk Delete" feature that allows users to select multiple contacts and delete them all with a single click

# Chapter 8. A Dynamic Archive UI

This chapter covers

- Creating a dynamically updated download UI using hypermedia
- Utilizing declarative polling to update content on an interval
- Adding smooth animations to a progress bar
- Triggering a file download with a response header

## A Dynamic Archive UI

We've come a long way from a traditional web 1.0-style web application at this point: we've added active search, bulk delete (with some nice animations) and a slew of other features. We have also built a HyperView-based mobile application, taking advantage of that mobile-native hypermedia. Overall, we have reached a level of interactivity that most people would assume requires some sort JavaScript framework for our application, but we've done nearly all of it with good old hypermedia, plus a bit of hypermedia-compatible scripting on the side.

Let's look at how we can add a final, major feature to Contact.app: downloading an archive of our contacts.

From a hypermedia perspective, downloading a file isn't exactly rocket science: using the HTTP **Content-Disposition** response header, we can easily tell the browser to download and save a file to the local computer. However, let's make this problem a bit more interesting: let's add in the fact that the export can take a bit of time, from five to ten seconds, or sometimes even longer, to complete.

This means if we implemented it as a normal HTTP request, driven by a link or a button, the user might sit, with very little visual feedback, wondering if the download is actually happening, while the export is being run. They might even click the download control again, causing a *second* archive request. Not good!

This is a classic problem in web app development. When faced with potentially long-running process like this, we ultimately have two options:

- When the user triggers the action, block until it is complete and then respond with the result
- Start the action and return immediately

Just blocking and waiting for the action to complete is certainly the easy way to handle it, but it is a pretty terrible user experience. If you've ever clicked on something in a web 1.0-style application and then had to sit there for what seems like an eternity before anything happens, you've seen the results of this choice.

The second option, starting the action asynchronously (say, by creating a thread, or submitting it to a job runner system) is much nicer from a user experience perspective: you can respond immediately and the user doesn't need to sit there wondering what's going on.

But the question is, what do you respond *with*? The job probably isn't complete yet, so you can't just provide a link to the results, can you?

I have seen a few different "simple" approaches in this scenario:

- Let the user know that the process has started and that they will be emailed a link to the completed process results when it is finished
- Let the user know that the process has started and recommend that they should manually (!!!) refresh the page to see the status of the process
- Let the user know that the process has started and automatically refresh the page every few seconds using some JavaScript

All of these work. But they all are a somewhat awkward user experience, are they?

What we'd *really* like in this scenario is something more like what you see when, for example, you download a large file via the browser: a nice progress bar indicating where in the process you are, and, when the process is complete, a link to click immediately to view the result of the process.

This may sound like something impossible to implement with hypermedia, and, frankly, we'll need to push htmx pretty hard to make this all work, but, when it is done, it won't be *that* much code, and we will be able to achieve the user experience we want for this archiving feature.

Let's get into it.

## UI Requirements

Before we dive into the implementation, let's discuss in broad terms what our new UI should look like: we want a button in the application labeled "Download Contact Archive". When a user clicks on that button, we want to replace that button with a progress bar. As the archive job progresses, we want to move the progress bar along. When the archive job is done, we want to show a link to the user to download the archive file.

In order to actually do the archiving, we are going to use a python class, `Archiver`, that implements all the functionality that we need. We aren't going to go into the implementation details of the class, because that's beyond the scope of this book. Let's say that it was created by another developer, and it provides all the server-side behavior necessary to produce a contact archive.

In particular, it gives us the following methods to work with:

- `status()` - A string representing the status of the download, either `Waiting`, `Running` or `Complete`
- `progress()` - A number between 0 and 1, indicating how much progress the archive job has made
- `run()` - Starts a new archive job (if the current status is `Waiting`)
- `reset()` - Cancels the current archive job, if any, and resets to the "Waiting" state
- `archive_file()` - The path to the archive file that has been created on the server, so we can send it to the client
- `get()` - A class method that lets us get the `Archiver` for the current user

This is not a terribly complicated API, is it? The only somewhat tricky aspect to the whole API is that the `run()` method is *non-blocking*. This means that it does not *immediately* create the archive file, but rather it starts a background job (as a thread) to do the actual archiving. This can be confusing if you aren't used to multithreading in code: you might be expecting the `run()` method to "block", that is, to actually execute the entire export and only return when it is finished. But, if it did that, we wouldn't be able to start the archive process and immediately render our desired archive progress UI, would we?

## Beginning Our Implementation

We now have everything we need to begin implementing our UI: a reasonable outline of what it is going to look like, and the domain logic to support it.

So, in getting down to building the UI, the first thing I want to note is that the UI is largely self-contained: we want to replace the button with the download progress bar, and then the link to download the results of the archive process. The fact that our archive user interface is all going to be within a specific part of the UI is a strong hint that we want to create a new template to handle it. Let's call this template `archive_ui.html`.

Another thing that jumps out at me is that we are going to want to replace the entire download UI in multiple cases:

- When we start the download, we will want to replace the button with a progress bar
- As the archive process proceeds, we will want to replace/update the progress bar
- When the archive process completes, we will want to replace the progress bar with a download link

Given we are going to be updating the UI in this way, it makes sense to have a good target for the updates. So, let's wrap the entire UI in a `div` tag, and then use that `div` as the target for all our operations.

Here is the start of the template content for our new archive user interface:

### *Our Initial Archive UI Template*

```
<div id="archive-ui" hx-target="this"<1> hx-swap="outerHTML"<2>>

</div>
```

- ① This `div` will be the target for all elements inside of it
- ② Replace the entire `div` every time using `outerHTML`

Next, let's add that "Download Contact Archive" button to the `div`, which will kick off the archive-then-download process. Let's use a `POST` to the path `/contacts/archive` to trigger the start of the process:

## Adding The Button

```
<div id="archive-ui" hx-target="this" hx-swap="outerHTML">
  <button hx-post="/contacts/archive"> ❶
    Download Contact Archive
  </button>
</div>
```

❶ This button will issue a **POST** to **/contacts/archive**

Finally, let's include this template in our main **index.html** template, above the contacts table:

## Our Initial Archive UI Template

```
{% block content %}

  {% include 'archive_ui.html' %} ❶

  <form action="/contacts" method="get" class="tool-bar">
```

❶ This template will now be included in the main template

With that done, we now have a button showing up in our web application to get the download going. Since the enclosing **div** has an **hx-target="this"** on it, the button will inherit that target and replace the **div** with whatever HTML comes back from the **POST** to **/contacts/archive**.

## Adding the POST End Point

Our next step is to handle the **POST** that the button is making. What we are going to want to do is to get the **Archiver** for the current user and invoke the **run()** method on it. This will start the archive process running. Then we will want to render some new content indicating that the process is running.

To do that, what we want to do is reuse the **archive\_ui** template to handle rendering the archive UI for both states, when the archiver is "Waiting" and when it is "Running". (We will handle the "Complete" state in a bit.)

This is a very common pattern: we put all the different potential UIs for a given chunk of the user interface into a single template, and conditionally render the appropriate interface. By keeping everything in one file, it makes it much easier for other developers (or for us, if we come back after a while!) to understand exactly how the UI works on the client side.

Since we are going to conditionally render different user interfaces based on the state of the archiver, we will need to pass the archiver out to the template as a parameter. So, again: we need to invoke **run()** on the archiver in our controller and then pass the archiver along to the template, so it can render the UI appropriate for the current status of the archive process.

Here is what the code looks like:

```
@app.route("/contacts/archive", methods=["POST"]) ❶
def start_archive():
    archiver = Archiver.get() ❷
    archiver.run() ❸
    return render_template("archive_ui.html", archiver=archiver) ❹
```

- ❶ Handle **POST** to **/contacts/archive**
- ❷ Look up the Archiver
- ❸ Invoke the non-blocking **run()** method on it
- ❹ Render the **archive\_ui.html** template, passing in the archiver

## Conditionally Rendering A Progress UI

Now let's turn our attention to updating **archive\_ui.html** to conditionally. We are passing the archiver through as a variable to the template, and recall that the archiver has a **status()** method that we can consult to see what the status of the archive process.

We want to render the "Download Contact Archive" button if the archiver has the status **Waiting**, and we want to render some sort of message indicating that progress is happening if the status is **Running**. Let's update our template code to do just that:

### Adding Conditional Rendering

```
<div id="archive-ui" hx-target="this" hx-swap="outerHTML">
    {% if archiver.status() == "Waiting" %} ❶
        <button hx-post="/contacts/archive">
            Download Contact Archive
        </button>
    {% elif archiver.status() == "Running" %}❷
        Running...❸
    {% end %}

</div>
```

- ❶ Only render button if the status is "Waiting"
- ❷ Render different content when status is "Running"
- ❸ For now, just some text saying things are Running

OK, great, we have some conditional logic in our template view, and the server side logic to support kicking off the archive process. We don't have a progress bar yet, but we'll get there! Let's see how this works as it stands, and refresh the main page of our application...

```
UndefinedError  
jinja2.exceptions.UndefinedError: 'archiver' is undefined
```

Ouch!

We get an error message right out of the box. Why? Ah, of course, we are including the `archive_ui.html` in the `index.html` template, but now the `archive_ui.html` template expects the archiver to be passed through to it, so it can conditionally render the correct UI. Well, that's an easy fix: we just need to pass the archiver through when we render the `index.html` template as well:

*Including The Archiver When We Render `index.html`*

```
@app.route("/contacts")  
def contacts():  
    search = request.args.get("q")  
    if search is not None:  
        contacts_set = Contact.search(search)  
        if request.headers.get('HX-Trigger') == 'search':  
            return render_template("rows.html", contacts=contacts_set)  
    else:  
        contacts_set = Contact.all()  
    return render_template("index.html", contacts=contacts_set,  
        archiver=Archiver.get())①
```

① Pass through archiver to the main template

Now with that done, we can load up the page. And, sure enough, we can see the "Download Contact Archive" button now! When we click on it, the button is replaced with the content "Running...", and we can see in our development console on the server side that the job is indeed getting kicked off properly.

## 8.1. Polling

That's definitely progress, but we don't exactly have the best progress indicator here: just some static text telling the user that the process is running!

What we want to do is have the content update as the process makes progress and, ideally, show a progress bar indicating how far along it is. How can we do that in htmx using plain old hypermedia?

The technique we want to use here is called "polling", where we issue a request on an interval and update the UI based on the new state of the server.



## Polling? Really?

Polling has a bit of a bad rap, and it isn't the sexiest technique in the world: today developers might look at a more advanced technique like WebSockets or Server Sent Events (SSE) to address this situation.

But, say what one will, polling *works* and it is drop-dead simple. You need to be careful to make sure you don't overwhelm your system with polling requests, but, with a bit of care, you can create a reliable, passively updated component in your UI.

htmx offers two types of polling. The first is "fixed rate polling", which uses a special `hx-trigger` syntax to indicate that something should be polled on a fixed interval.

Here is an example:

### *Fixed Interval Polling*

```
<div hx-get="/messages" hx-trigger="every 3s"> ❶  
</div>
```

❶ trigger a `GET` to `/messages` every three seconds

This works great in situations when you want to poll indefinitely, for example if you want to constantly poll for new messages to display to the user. However, fixed rate polling isn't ideal when you have a definite process after which you want to stop polling: it keeps polling forever, until the element it is on is removed from the DOM.

In our case, we have a definite process with an ending to it. So, in our case, it will be better to use the other polling technique, known as "load polling". In load polling, you take advantage of the fact that htmx triggers a `load` event when content is loaded into the DOM. So you can create a trigger on the `load` event, but then add a bit of a delay so that the request doesn't trigger immediately.

If you do this, then you can conditionally render the `hx-trigger` on every request: when a process has completed you can simply not include the trigger and the load polling stops. A nice and simple way to poll for until a definite process finishes.

## Using Polling To Update The Archive UI

So, let's use load polling now to update our UI as the archiver makes progress. To show the progress, let's use a CSS-based progress bar, taking advantage of the `progress()` method which returns a number between 0 and 1 indicating how close the archive process is to completion. Here is the snippet of HTML we will use:

### *A CSS-based Progress Bar*

```
<div class="progress" >  
  <div class="progress-bar" style="width:{{ archiver.progress() * 100 }}%"></div> ❶  
</div>
```

① The width of the inner element corresponds to the progress

This CSS-based progress bar has two components: an outer `div` that provides the wire frame for the progress bar, and an inner `div` that is the actual progress bar indicator. We set the width of the inner progress bar to some percentage (note we need to multiply the `progress()` result by 100 to get a percentage) and that will make the progress indicator the appropriate width within the parent `div`.

As I have mentioned before, this is not a book on CSS, but, for completeness, here is the CSS for this progress bar:

#### *The CSS For Our Progress Bar*

```
.progress {
  height: 20px;
  margin-bottom: 20px;
  overflow: hidden;
  background-color: #f5f5f5;
  border-radius: 4px;
  box-shadow: inset 0 1px 2px rgba(0,0,0,.1);
}

.progress-bar {
  float: left;
  width: 0%;
  height: 100%;
  font-size: 12px;
  line-height: 20px;
  color: #fff;
  text-align: center;
  background-color: #337ab7;
  box-shadow: inset 0 -1px 0 rgba(0,0,0,.15);
  transition: width .6s ease;
}
```

Which ends up rendering like this:

[screenshot progress bar] | *screenshot\_progress\_bar.png*

*Figure 10. Our CSS-Based Progress Bar*

So let's add the code for our progress bar into our `archive_ui.html` template for the case when the archiver is running, and let's update the copy to say "Creating Archive...":

```
<div id="archive-ui" hx-target="this" hx-swap="outerHTML">
  {% if archiver.status() == "Waiting" %}
    <button hx-post="/contacts/archive">
      Download Contact Archive
    </button>
  {% elif archiver.status() == "Running" %}
    <div>
      Creating Archive...
      <div class="progress" > ①
        <div class="progress-bar" style="width:{{ archiver.progress() * 100
    }}%"></div>
      </div>
    </div>
  {% endif %}
</div>
```

① Our shiny new progress bar

Sweet, now when we click the "Download Contact Archive" button, we get the progress bar. But it still doesn't update because we haven't implemented load polling yet! It just sits there, at zero.

To get the UI we want, we'll need to implement load polling using `hx-trigger`. We can add this to pretty much any element inside the conditional block for when the archiver is running, so let's add it to that `div` that is wrapping around the "Creating Archive..." text and the progress bar. Finally, let's make it poll by issuing a `GET` to the same path that the `POST` was issued too: `/contacts/archive`. (As you have probably noticed, this is a common pattern in RESTful systems: reusing the same path with different actions.)

Implementing Load Polling

```
<div id="archive-ui" hx-target="this" hx-swap="outerHTML">
  {% if archiver.status() == "Waiting" %}
    <button hx-post="/contacts/archive">
      Download Contact Archive
    </button>
  {% elif archiver.status() == "Running" %}
    <div hx-get="/contacts/archive" hx-trigger="load delay:500ms"> ①
      Creating Archive...
      <div class="progress" >
        <div class="progress-bar" style="width:{{ archiver.progress() * 100
    }}%"></div>
      </div>
    </div>
  {% endif %}
</div>
```

① Issue a `GET` to `/contacts/archive` 500 milliseconds after the content loads

Again, it is important to realize that, when this `GET` is issued to `/contacts/archive`, it is going to

replace the `div` with the id `archive-ui`, not just itself. The `hx-target` attribute is *inherited* by all child elements within the `archive-ui` `div`, so, unless it is explicitly overridden by a child, the children will all target that outermost `div` in the `archive_ui.html` file.

OK, now we need to handle the `GET` to `/contacts/archive` on the server. Thankfully, this is quite easy: all we want to do is re-render `archive_ui.html` with the archiver:

#### Handling Progress Updates

```
@app.route("/contacts/archive", methods=["GET"]) ①
def archive_status():
    archiver = Archiver.get()
    return render_template("archive_ui.html", archiver=archiver) ②
```

① handle `GET` to the `/contacts/archive` path

② just re-render the `archive_ui.html` template

Simple, like so much else with hypermedia!

And now, when we click the "Download Contact Archive", sure enough, we get a progress bar that updates every 500 milliseconds! And, as the result of the call to `archiver.progress()` incrementally updates from 0 to 1, the progress bar moves across the screen for us, very cool!

## Downloading The Result

OK, we have one more state to handle, the case when `archiver.status()` is set to "Complete", and there is a JSON archive of the data ready to download. When the archiver is complete, we can get the local JSON file on the server from the archiver via the `archive_file()` call.

Let's add another case to our `if` statement to handle the "Complete" state, and, when the archive job is complete, let's render a link to a new path, `/contacts/archive/file`, which will respond with the archived JSON file. Here is the new code:

```
<div id="archive-ui" hx-target="this" hx-swap="outerHTML">
  {% if archiver.status() == "Waiting" %}
    <button hx-post="/contacts/archive">
      Download Contact Archive
    </button>
  {% elif archiver.status() == "Running" %}
    <div hx-get="/contacts/archive" hx-trigger="load delay:500ms">
      Creating Archive...
      <div class="progress" >
        <div class="progress-bar" style="width:{{ archiver.progress() * 100
}}%"></div>
      </div>
    </div>
  {% elif archiver.status() == "Complete" %} ❶
    <a hx-boost="false" href="/contacts/archive/file">Archive Ready! Click here
to download. &downarrow;</a> ❷
  {% endif %}
</div>
```

❶ If the status is "Complete", render a download link

❷ The link will issue a **GET** to `/contacts/archive/file`

Note that the link has a `hx-boost` set to `false`. It has this so that the link will not inherit the boost behavior that is present for other links and, thus, will not be issued via AJAX. We want this "normal" link behavior because an AJAX request cannot download a file directly, whereas a plain anchor tag can.

## Downloading The Completed Archive

The final step is to handle the **GET** request to `/contacts/archive/file`. We want to send the file that the archiver created down to the client. We are in luck: flask has a very simple mechanism for sending a file as a downloaded response: the `send_file()` method.

We can pass this method the path to the archive file that the archiver created, the name of the file that we want the browser to create, and if we want it sent "as an attachment". This last argument will which will tell Flask to set the HTTP response header `Content-Disposition` to `attachment` with the given filename, which will trigger the browsers file-downloading behavior.

### *Sending A File To The Client*

```
@app.route("/contacts/archive/file", methods=["GET"])
def archive_content():
    manager = Archiver.get()
    return send_file(manager.archive_file(), "archive.json", as_attachment=True) ❶
```

❶ send the file to the client

Perfect! Now we have an archive UI that is pretty darned slick: You can click the button and a

progress bar appears. When the progress bar reaches 100%, it disappears and a link to download the archive file appears. The user can then click on that link and download their archive!

## 8.2. Smoothing Things Out: Animations in htmx

As cool as this UI is, there is one minor annoyance with it: as the progress bar updates it "jumps" from one position to the next. This looks jerky and is reminiscent of the feel of a full page refresh in web 1.0 style applications. It turns out that there is a native HTML technology for smoothing out changes on an element from one state to another that we discussed in Chapter 5: the CSS Transitions API.

Using CSS Transitions, you can smoothly animate an element between different styling by using the `transition` property.

If you look back at our CSS definition of the `.progress-bar` class, you will see the following transition definition in it: `transition: width .6s ease;`. This means that when the width of the progress bar is changed from, say 20% to 30%, the browser will animate over a period of .6 seconds using the "ease" function (which has a nice accelerate/decelerate effect).

That's great and all, but in our example, htmx is *replacing* the content with new content. It isn't updating the width of the *existing* element, which would trigger a transition. Rather, it is simply replacing it with a new element. So no transition will occur, which is, indeed, what we are seeing: the progress bar jumps from spot to spot as it moves towards completion.

### The "Settling" Step in htmx

When we discussed the htmx swap model in Chapter 5, we focused on the classes that htmx adds and removes, but we skipped over the idea of "settling". What is "settling" in htmx terms? Settling is the following process: when htmx is about to replace a chunk of content, it looks through the new content and finds all elements with an `id` on it. It then looks in the *existing* content for elements with the same `id`. If there is one, it does the following shuffle:

- The *new* content gets the attributes of the *old* content temporarily
- The new content is inserted
- After a small delay, the new content has its attributes reverted to their actual values

So, what is this strange little dance supposed to achieve? Well, what this ends up meaning is that, if an element has a stable id between swaps, you *can* write CSS transitions between various states. Since the new content briefly has the *old* attributes, the normal CSS mechanism will kick in when the actual values are restored.

So, in our case, all we need to do is to add a stable ID to our `progress-bar` element, and, rather than jumping on every update, the progress bar should smoothly move across the screen as it is updating, using the CSS transition defined in our style sheet:

```
<div class="progress" >
  <div id="archive-progress" class="progress-bar" style="width:{{
archiver.progress() * 100 }}%"></div> ❶
</div>
```

❶ The progress bar div now has a stable id across requests

So, despite all the complicated mechanics going on behind the scenes in htmx, all we have to do, as an htmx user, is add a simple `id` attribute to the element we want to animate. And, viola, nice, smooth progress bar, even though we are replacing the content with new HTML!

## 8.3. Dismissing The Download UI

Next, let's make it possible for the user to dismiss the download link and return to the original export UI state. To do this, we'll add a button that issues a `DELETE` to the path `/contacts/archive`, indicating that the current archive can be removed or cleaned up.

We'll add it after the download link, like so:

### Clearing The Download

```
<a hx-boost="false" href="/contacts/archive/file" _="on load click() me">Archive
Ready! Click here to download. &downarrow;</a>
<button hx-delete="/contacts/archive">Clear Download</button> ❶
```

❶ A simple button that issues a `DELETE` to `/contacts/archive`

Now the user has a button that they can click on to dismiss the archive download link. But we will need to hook it up on the server side. As usual, this is pretty straight forward: we simply create a new handler for the `DELETE` HTTP Action, invoke the `reset()` method on the archiver, and re-render the `archive_ui.html` template. Since this button is picking up the same `hx-target` and `hx-swap` configuration as everything else, it "just works".

Here is the server side code:

### Resetting The Download

```
@app.route("/contacts/archive", methods=["DELETE"])
def reset_archive():
    archiver = Archiver.get()
    archiver.reset() ❶
    return render_template("archive_ui.html", archiver=archiver)
```

❶ Call `reset()` on the archiver

Looks pretty similar to our other methods, doesn't it? That's the idea!

## 8.4. An Alternative UX: Auto-Download

While I prefer the current user experience for archiving contacts, where a progress bar shows the progress of the process and, when it completes, I am given a new hypermedia control to actually download the file, there are other alternatives to it. Another pattern that I see on the web is "auto-downloading": rather than requiring the user to click an additional button or link when the archive (or other process) is complete, instead the system automatically downloads the file without any additional user interaction.

We can add this functionality quite easily to our application with just a bit of scripting. We will use hyperscript because it is our preferred scripting option, but the equivalent JavaScript should be obvious.

All we need to do to implement this auto-download feature is the following: when the download link renders, simply automatically click on the link for the user.

The hyperscript will read basically just like that sentence:

*Auto-Downloading*

```
<a hx-boost="false" href="/contacts/archive/file"
  _="on load click() me"> ❶
  Archive Downloading! Click here if the download does not start.
</a>
```

❶ a bit of hyperscript to make the file auto-download

Have we mentioned that we like hyperscript?

Note, once again, that the scripting here is simply *enhancing* the existing hypermedia, rather than replacing it with a non-hypermedia request. This is hypermedia-friendly scripting!

So, despite our initial trepidation that it could be done, we've managed to create a very dynamic UI for our archive functionality, with a progress bar and auto-downloading, and we've done nearly all of it (with the exception of a small bit of scripting for auto-download) in pure hypermedia. And it only took about 16 lines of front end code and 16 lines of backend code to build the whole thing, showing once again that HTML, with the help of htmx, can, in fact, be very expressive.

## 8.5. Summary

- In this chapter we built a sophisticated user interface to interact with a non-blocking, asynchronous back end process
- We saw a two different ways to do polling in htmx, both "indefinite" polling using the `hx-trigger` attribute and a technique called "load polling"
- We settled on using "load polling" for our situation, since it had a definite end point after which we no longer wanted to poll
- We saw how the htmx swap mechanism enables CSS transitions when an element has a stable ID in new pieces of content, and we used that to smooth out the progress bar in our application



- We used a bit of hypermedia-friendly scripting to trigger an auto-download when the archive progress completes

# Chapter 9. Deep htmx

This chapter covers

- The details of htmx attributes
- Events & htmx
- HTTP Requests & htmx
- Updating Other Content
- Debugging htmx Applications
- Security Considerations
- Configuring htmx

## Getting Deeper Into htmx

In this chapter we are going to look more deeply into htmx. We've accomplished quite a bit with what we've learned so far, but, when you are developing Hypermedia Driven Applications, there are likely to be situations that arise that require additional functionality to address cleanly. We will go over some less commonly used attributes in htmx, as well as expand on the details of some attributes we have already used.

Additionally, we will look at the functionality that htmx offers beyond simple HTML attributes: how htmx extends standard HTTP request and responses, how htmx works with (and produces) events, and how to approach situations where there isn't a simple, single target on the page to be updated.

Finally, we will take a look at practical considerations when doing htmx development: how to debug htmx-based applications effectively, security considerations you will need to take into account when working with htmx, and how to configure the behavior of htmx.

### 9.1. htmx Attributes

Thus far we have, we've used about fifteen different attributes from htmx in our application. The most important ones have been:

Attribute	Use
<code>hx-get</code> , <code>hx-post</code> , etc.	To specify the AJAX request an element should make
<code>hx-trigger</code>	To specify the event that triggers a request
<code>hx-swap</code>	To specify how to swap the returned HTML content into the DOM
<code>hx-target</code>	To specify where in the DOM to swap the returned HTML content

Let's do a deep dive on two of these attributes, `hx-swap` and `hx-trigger`, because they support a large

number of options that might be useful when you are creating more advanced Hypermedia Driven Applications.

## hx-swap

The `hx-swap` attribute is often not included on elements that issue htmx-driven requests. This is because, for many cases, the default behavior, `innerHTML`, which swaps the inner HTML of the element, is fine. Of course, we have seen cases where we wanted to override this behavior and use `outerHTML`, for example. And, in chapter 3, we discussed some other swap options beyond these two, `beforebegin`, `afterend`, etc.

In chapter 5, we also looked at the `swap` delay modifier for `hx-swap`, which allowed us to fade some content out before it was removed from the DOM.

In addition to these, `hx-swap` also supports the following modifiers:

Modifier	Use
<code>settle</code>	Like <code>swap</code> , this allows you to apply a specific delay between when the content has been swapped into the DOM and when its attributes are "settled", that is, updated from their old values (if any) to their new values.
<code>show</code>	Allows you to specify an element that should be shown (that is, scrolled into the viewport of the browser if necessary) when a request is completed
<code>scroll</code>	Allows you to specify a scrollable element (that is, an element with scrollbars), that should be scrolled to the top or bottom when a request is completed
<code>focus-scroll</code>	Allows you to specify that htmx should scroll to the focused element when a request completes. (This defaults to false)

So, for example, if we had a button that issued a `GET` request, and we wished to scroll to the top of the `body` element when the request had completed, we would write the following HTML:

### *Scrolling To The Top Of The Page*

```
<button hx-get="/contacts" hx-target="#content-div"
        hx-swap="innerHTML show:body:top"> ①
  Get Contacts
</button>
```

① This tells htmx to show the top of the body after the swap occurs

More details and examples can be found online at the documentation page for `hx-swap`: <https://htmx.org/attributes/hx-swap/>

## hx-trigger

Like `hx-swap`, `hx-trigger` can often be omitted when you are using `htmx`, because the default behavior is typically what you want anyway. Recall the default triggering events are determined by an element's type:

- Requests on `input`, `textarea` & `select` elements are triggered by the `change` event
- Requests on `form` elements are triggered on the `submit` event
- Requests on all other elements are triggered by the `click` event

There are times, however, when you want a more elaborate trigger specification. A classic example was the active search example we implemented in `Contact.app`:

### *The Active Search Input*

```
<input id="search" type="search" name="q" value="{{ request.args.get('q') or '' }}"
      hx-get="/contacts"
      hx-trigger="search, keyup delay:200ms changed"/> ①
```

① An elaborate trigger specification

This example took advantage of two modifiers available for the `hx-trigger` attribute:

Modifier	Use
<code>delay</code>	Allows you to specify a delay to wait before a request is issued. If the event occurs again, the first event is discarded and the timer resets. This allows you to "debounce" requests.
<code>changed</code>	Allows you to specify that a request should only be issued when the <code>value</code> property of the given element has changed

`hx-trigger` has quite a few additional modifiers. This makes sense, because events are fairly complex and we want to be able to take advantage of all the power they offer. (We will discuss events in more detail below.)

Here are the other modifiers available on `hx-trigger`:

Modifier	Use
<code>once</code>	The given event will only trigger a request once
<code>throttle</code>	Allows you to throttle events, only issuing them once every certain interval. This is different than <code>delay</code> in that the first event will trigger immediately, but any following events will not trigger until the throttle time period has elapsed

Modifier	Use
from	A CSS selector that allows you to pick another element to listen for events on. We will see an example of this used later in the chapter.
target	A CSS selector that allows you to filter events to only those that occur directly on a given element. In the DOM, events "bubble" to their parent elements, so a <code>click</code> event on a button will also trigger a <code>click</code> event on a parent <code>div</code> , all the way up to the <code>body</code> element. Sometimes you want to specify an event directly on a given element, and this attribute allows you to do that.
consume	If this option is set to <code>true</code> , the triggering event will be cancelled and not propagate to parent elements.
queue	This option allows you to specify how events are queued in htmx. By default, when htmx receives a triggering event, it will issue a request and start an event queue. If the request is still in flight when another event is received, it will queue the event and, when the request finishes, trigger a new request. By default, it only keeps the last event it receives, but you can modify that behavior using this option: for example, you can set it to <code>none</code> and ignore all triggering events that occur during a request.

## Filters

The `hx-trigger` attribute allows you to specify a *filter* to events by using square brackets enclosing a JavaScript expression after the event name.

Let's say you have a complex situation where contacts should only be retrievable in certain situations, and you have a JavaScript function, `contactRetrievalEnabled()` that returns a boolean, `true` if contacts can be retrieved and `false` otherwise. You want to gate a button that issues a request to `/contacts` on this function. To do this using an event filter in htmx, you would write the following HTML:

```
<script>
  function contactRetrievalEnabled() {
    ...
  }
</script>
<button hx-get="/contacts" hx-trigger="click[contactRetrievalEnabled()]"> ①
  Get Contacts
</button>
```

① the event filter, calling `contactRetrievalEnabled()`

The button will not issue a request if `contactRetrievalEnabled()` returns false, allowing you to dynamically control when the request will be made. Common situations that call for an event trigger are:

- Only issue a request when a certain element has focus
- Only issue a request when a given form is valid
- Only issue a request when a set of inputs have specific values

Using event filters, you can use whatever logic you'd like to filter requests by `htmx`.

## Synthetic Events

In addition to these modifiers, `hx-trigger` offers a few "synthetic" events, that is events that are not part of the regular DOM API. We have already seen `load` and `revealed` in our lazy loading and infinite scroll examples, but `htmx` also gives you an `intersect` event that triggers when an element intersects its parent element.

This synthetic event uses the modern Intersection Observer API, which you can read more about here: [https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/API/Intersection\\_Observer\\_API](https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/API/Intersection_Observer_API)

Intersection gives you much finer grained control over exactly when a request should be triggered. For example, you can specify a threshold and specify that the request should only be issued when an element is 50% visible.

The `hx-trigger` attribute certainly is the most complex one in `htmx`, and more details and examples can be found online its documentation page: <https://htmx.org/attributes/hx-trigger/>

## Other Attributes

`htmx` offers many other less commonly used attributes for fine-tuning the behavior of your Hypermedia Driven Application. Here are some of the most useful ones:

Attribute	Use
<code>hx-push-url</code>	"Pushes" the request URL (or some other value) into the navigation bar

Attribute	Use
hx-preserve	Preserves a bit of the DOM between requests (the original content will be kept, regardless of what is returned)
hx-sync	Synchronized requests between two or more elements
hx-disable	Disables htmx behavior on this element and any children. We will discuss this more below in the security section.

Let's take a look at `hx-sync`, which allows us to synchronize AJAX requests between two or more elements. Consider a simple case where we have two buttons that both target the same element on the screen:

#### *Two Competing Buttons*

```
<button hx-get="/contacts" hx-target="body"> ❶
  Get Contacts
</button>
<button hx-get="/settings" hx-target="body"> ❶
  Get Settings
</button>
```

This is fine and will work, but what if a user clicks the "Get Contacts" button and then the request takes a while to respond? And, in the meantime the user clicks the "Get Settings" button? In this case we would have two requests in flight at the same time.

If the `/settings` request finished first and displayed the user's setting information, they might be very surprised if they began making changes and then, suddenly, the `/contacts` request finished and replaced the entire body with the contacts instead!

To deal with this situation, we might consider using an `hx-indicator` to alert the user that something is going on, making it less likely that they click the second button. But if we really want to guarantee that there is only one request at a time issued between these two buttons, the right thing to do is to use the `hx-sync` attribute. Let's enclose both buttons in a `div` and eliminate the redundant `hx-target` specification by hoisting the attribute up to that `div`. We can then use `hx-sync` on that `div` to coordinate requests between the two buttons.

Here is our updated code:

```
<div hx-target="body" ①
  hx-sync="this"> ②
  <button hx-get="/contacts"> ①
    Get Contacts
  </button>
  <button hx-get="/settings"> ①
    Get Settings
  </button>
</div>
```

① Hoist the duplicate `hx-target` attributes to the parent `div`

② Synchronize on the parent `div`

By placing the `hx-sync` attribute on the `div` with the value `this`, we are saying "Synchronize all htmx requests that occur within this `div` element with one another." This means that if one button already has a request in flight, other buttons within the `div` will not issue requests until that has finished.

The `hx-sync` attribute supports a few different strategies that allow you to, for example, replace an existing request in flight, or queue requests with a particular queuing strategy. You can find complete documentation, as well as examples, at the documentation page for `hx-sync`: <https://htmx.org/attributes/hx-sync/>

As you can see, htmx offers a lot of attribute-driven functionality for more advanced Hypermedia Driven Applications. A complete reference for all htmx attributes can be found at <https://htmx.org/reference/#attributes>

## 9.2. Events

We have been working with events in htmx primary via the `hx-trigger` attribute. This has proven to be a powerful mechanism for driving our application using declarative, HTML-friendly syntax. However, there is more to events and htmx than just `hx-trigger`.

### htmx-generated Events

It turns out that, in addition to making it easy to *respond* to events, htmx also *emits* many useful events. You can use these events to add more functionality to your application, either via htmx itself, or by way of scripting.

Here are some of the most commonly used events in htmx:

Event	Description
<code>htmx:load</code>	Triggered when new content is loaded into the DOM by htmx



Event	Description
<code>htmx:configRequest</code>	Triggered before a request is issued, allowing you to programmatically configure the request (or cancel it entirely)
<code>htmx:afterRequest</code>	Triggered after a request has responded
<code>htmx:abort</code>	A custom event that can be sent to an htmx-powered element to abort an open request

We have already seen how to use the `htmx:load` event, using the `htmx.onLoad()` API in the `sortable.js` example, which is probably one of the most common uses of events.

## Using The `htmx:configRequest` Event

Let's take a look at how you might use the `htmx:configRequest` event to configure an HTTP request. Consider the following scenario: our server-side team has decided that they want you to include a token for extra validation on every request. The token is going to be stored in `localStorage` in the browser, in the slot `special-token`. The server-side team wants you to include this special token on every request made by htmx, as the `X-SPECIAL-TOKEN` header.

How could you achieve this? One way would be to catch the `htmx:configRequest` event and update the `detail.headers` object with this token from `localStorage`.

In VanillaJS, it would look something like this:

*Adding the `X-SPECIAL-TOKEN` Header*

```
document.body.addEventListener("htmx:configRequest", function(configEvent){
    configEvent.detail.headers['X-SPECIAL-TOKEN'] = localStorage['special-token']; ①
})
```

① retrieve the value from local storage and set it into a header

As you can see, we add a new value to the `headers` property of the event's detail. After the event handler executes, the `headers` property is read by htmx and used to construct the headers for an AJAX request. So, with this bit of JavaScript code, we have added a new custom header to every AJAX request that htmx makes. Slick!

You can also update the `parameters` property to change the parameters submitted by the request, change the target of the request, and so on. Full documentation for the `htmx:configRequest` event can be found here: <https://htmx.org/events/#htmx:configRequest>

## Canceling a Request using `htmx:abort`

So we can listen for many useful events from htmx, and we can respond to events using `hx-trigger`. What else can we do with events? It turns out that htmx itself listens for one special event, `htmx:abort`. When htmx receives this event on an element that has a request in flight, it will abort the request.

Consider a situation where we have a potentially long-running request to `/contacts`, and we want to offer a way for the users to cancel the request. What we want is a button that issues the request, driven by htmx, of course, and then another button that will send an `htmx:abort` event to the first one.

Here is what the code might look like:

#### *A Button With An Abort*

```
<button id="contacts-btn" hx-get="/contacts" hx-target="body"> ❶  
  Get Contacts  
</button>  
<button onclick="document.getElementById('contacts-btn').dispatchEvent(new  
Event('htmx:abort'))"> ❷  
  Cancel  
</button>
```

❶ A normal htmx-driven `GET` request to `/contacts`

❷ JavaScript to look up the button and send it an `htmx:abort` event

So now, if a user clicks on the "Get Contacts" button and the request takes a while, they can click on the "Cancel" button and end the request. Of course, in a more sophisticated user interface, you may want to disable the "Cancel" button unless an HTTP request is in flight, but that would be a pain to implement in pure JavaScript. Thankfully it isn't too bad to implement in hyperscript, so let's take a look at what that would look like:

#### *A hyperscript-Powered Button With An Abort*

```
<button id="contacts-btn" hx-get="/contacts" hx-target="body">  
  Get Contacts  
</button>  
<button _="on click send htmx:abort to #contacts-btn  
  on htmx:beforeRequest from #contacts-btn remove @disabled from me  
  on htmx:afterRequest from #contacts-btn add @disabled to me">  
  Cancel  
</button>
```

Now we have a "Cancel" button that is disabled only when a request from the `contacts-btn` button is in flight. And we are taking advantage of htmx-generated and handled events, as well as the event-friendly syntax of hyperscript, to make it happen. Not bad!

## Server Generated Events

We are going to talk more about the various ways that htmx enhances regular HTTP requests and responses in the next section, but, since it involves events, we are going to discuss one HTTP Response header that htmx supports: `HX-Trigger`. We have discussed before how HTTP requests and responses support *headers*, name-value pairs that contain metadata about a given request or response. We took advantage of the `HX-Trigger` request header, which includes the id of the element that triggered a given request.

It turns out that there is a *response* header, also named **HX-Trigger** in that htmx supports. This response header allows you to trigger an event on the element that submitted an AJAX request. This turns out to be a powerful way to coordinate elements in the DOM in a decoupled manner.

To see how this might work, let's consider the following situation: we have a button that grabs new contacts from some remote system on the server. We will ignore the details of the server side implementation, but we know that if we issue a **POST** to the **/integrations/1** path, it will trigger a synchronization with the system.

Now, this synchronization may or may not result in new contacts being created. In the case where new contacts *are* created, we want to refresh our contacts table. In the case where no contacts are created, we don't want to refresh the table.

How could we implement this using the **HX-Trigger** response header? Well, we could conditionally add an **HX-Trigger** response header with the value **contacts-updated**, which would trigger the **contacts-updated** event on the button that made the AJAX request to **/integrations/1**. And we can then take advantage of the **from:** modifier of the **hx-trigger** attribute to listen for that event! Now we can effectively trigger htmx request from the server side!

Here is what the client-side code might look like:

#### *The Contacts Table*

```
<button hx-post="/integrations/1"> ❶  
  Pull Contacts From Integration  
</button>  
  
  ...  
  
<table hx-get="/contacts/table" hx-trigger="contacts-updated from:body"> ❷  
  ...  
</table>
```

❶ The response to this request may conditionally trigger the **contacts-updated** event

❷ This table listens for the event and refreshes when it occurs

The table listens for the **contacts-updated** event, and it does so on the **body** element. It listens on the **body** element since the event will bubble up from the button, and this allows us to not couple the button and table together: we can move the button and table around as we like and, via events, the behavior we want will continue to work fine. Additionally, we may want *other* elements or requests to trigger the **contacts-updated** event, so this provides a general mechanism for refreshing the contacts table in our application. Very nice!

Now, we are omitting the server side implementation of this feature in the interest of simplicity, but this gives you an idea of how the **HX-Trigger** response header can be used to coordinate sophisticated interactions in the DOM.

## 9.3. HTTP Requests & Responses

We have just seen an advanced feature of HTTP responses supported by htmx, the **HX-Trigger** response header, but htmx supports quite a few more headers for both requests and responses. In chapter 5 we discussed the headers present in HTTP Requests. Here some of the more important headers you can use to change htmx behavior with HTTP responses:

Response Header	Description
<b>HX-Location</b>	Causes a client-side redirection to a new location
<b>HX-Push-Url</b>	Pushes a new URL into the location bar
<b>HX-Refresh</b>	Refreshes the current page
<b>HX-Retarget</b>	Allows you to specify a new target to swap the response content into on the client side

You can find a reference for all requests and response headers here: <https://htmx.org/reference/#headers>

### HTTP Response Codes

Even more important than response headers, in terms of information conveyed to the client, is the *HTTP Response Code*. We discussed HTTP Response Codes in Chapter 4. By and large htmx handles various response codes in the manner that you would expect: it swaps content for all 200-level response codes and does nothing for others. There are, however, two "special" 200-level response codes:

- **204 No Content** - When htmx receives this response code, it will *not* swap any content into the DOM (even if the response has a body)
- **286** - When htmx receives this response code to a request that is polling, it will stop the polling

You can override the behavior of htmx with respect to response codes by, you guessed it, responding to an event! The **htmx:beforeSwap** event allows you to change the behavior of htmx with respect to various status codes.

Let's say that, rather than doing nothing when a **404** occurred, you wanted to alert the user that an error had occurred. To do so, you want to invoke a JavaScript method, **showNotFoundError()**. Let's add some code to use the **htmx:beforeSwap** event to make this happen:

*Showing a 404 Dialog*

```
document.body.addEventListener('htmx:beforeSwap', function(evt) { ①
    if(evt.detail.xhr.status === 404){ ②
        showNotFoundError();
    }
});
```

- ① hook into the **htmx:beforeSwap** event
- ② if the response code is a **404**, show the user a dialog

You can also use the `htmx:beforeSwap` event to configure if the response should be swapped into the DOM and what element the response should target. This gives you quite a bit of flexibility in choosing how you want to use HTTP Response codes in your application. Full documentation on the `htmx:beforeSwap` event can be found here: <https://htmx.org/events/#htmx:beforeSwap>

## 9.4. Updating Other Content

Above we saw how to use a server-triggered event, via the `HX-Trigger` HTTP response header, to update a piece of the DOM based on the response to another part of the DOM. This technique addresses the general problem that comes up in Hypermedia Driven Applications: "How do I update other content?" After all, in normal HTTP requests, there is only one "target", the entire screen, and, similarly, in htmx-based requests, there is only one target: either the explicit or implicit target of the element.

If you want to update other content in htmx, you have a few options:

### Expanding Your Selection

The first option, and the simplest, is to "expand the target". That is, rather than simply replacing a small part of the screen, expand the target of your htmx-driven request until it is large enough to enclose all the elements that need to be updated on a screen. This has the tremendous advantage of being simple and reliable. The downside is that it may not provide the user experience that you want, and it may not play well with a particular server-side template layout. Regardless, I always recommend at least thinking about this approach first.

### Out of Band Swaps

A second option, which is a bit more complex, is to take advantage of "Out Of Band" content support in htmx. When htmx receives a response, it will look for top-level content in that response that includes the `hx-swap-oob` attribute on it. That content will be removed from the response, so it will not be swapped into the DOM in the normal manner. Instead, it will be swapped in for the content that it matches, by its id.

Let's look at an example of this approach. Let's consider the situation we had above, where a contacts table needs to be updated conditionally, based on if an integration pulls down any new contacts. Previously we solved this by using events and a server-triggered event via the `HX-Trigger` response header.

In this case, instead of using an event, let's take advantage of the `hx-swap-oob` attribute in the response to the `POST` to `/integrations/1` to "piggy back" the new contacts table content on the response.

## The Updated Contacts Table

```
<button hx-post="/integrations/1"> ❶  
  Pull Contacts From Integration  
</button>  
  
  ...  
  
<table id="contacts-table"> ❷  
  ...  
</table>
```

❶ the button still issues a **POST** to **/integrations/1**

❷ the table no longer listens for an event, but it now has an id

Now let's look at a potential response to the **POST** to **/integrations/1**. This response will include the "regular" content that needs to be swapped into the button, per the usual htmx mechanism. But it will also include a new version, updated version of the contacts table, which will be marked as **hx-swap-oob="true"**. This content will be removed from the response so it is not inserted into the button, but will be instead swapped into the DOM in place of the existing table since it has the same id value.

## A Response With Out of Band Content

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK  
Content-Type: text/html; charset=utf-8  
...  
  
Pull Contacts From Integration ❶  
  
<table id="contacts-table" hx-swap-oob="true"> ❷  
  ...  
</table>
```

❶ this content will be placed in the button

❷ this content will be removed from the response and swapped by id

Using this technique, you are able to piggyback content updates of other elements on top of requests by other elements. The **hx-swap-oob** attribute supports other additional features, all of which are documented here: <https://htmx.org/attributes/hx-swap-oob/>

Depending on how exactly your server side templating technology works, and what level of interactivity your application requires, out of band swapping can be a powerful mechanism for more flexible content updates.

## Events

Finally, the most complex mechanism for updating content is the one we saw back in the events section: using server-triggered events to update elements. This approach can be very clean, but also

requires a lot deeper conceptual knowledge of HTML and events, and a commitment to the event-driven approach. While we like this style of development, it isn't for everyone and we typically recommend this only if the htmx philosophy of event-driven hypermedia really speaks to you.

If it *does* speak to you, however, we say: go for it! We've created some very complex and flexible user interfaces using this approach, and we are quite fond of it.

## Being Pragmatic

All of these approaches to the "Updating Other Content" problem will work, and will often work well. However, there may come a point where it would just be simpler to use a different approach, like the reactive one. As much as we like the hypermedia approach, the reality is that there are some UX patterns that simply cannot be implemented easily using it. The canonical example of this sort of pattern, which we have mentioned before, is something like a live online spreadsheet: it is simply too complex a user interface, with too many inter-dependencies, to be done well via exchanges of hypermedia with a server.

In cases like this, and any time you feel like an htmx-based solution is proving to be more complex than another approach might be, we can gladly recommend that you consider a different technology: use the right tool for the job! You can always use htmx for the parts of your application that aren't as complex and don't need the full complexity of a reactive framework, and save that complexity budget for the parts that do.

We are not hypermedia puritans and encourage you to learn many different web technologies, with an eye to the strengths and weaknesses of each one. This will give you a deep tool chest to reach into when problems present themselves. Our hope is that, with htmx, hypermedia might be a tool you reach for more frequently!

## 9.5. Debugging

We have been talking a lot about events in this chapter and we are not ashamed to admit: we are big fans of events. They are the underlying technology of almost any interesting user interface, and are particularly useful in the DOM once they have been unlocked for general using in HTML. They let you build nicely decoupled software while often preserving the locality of behavior we like so much.

However, events are not perfect. One area where events can be particularly tricky to deal with is *debugging*: you often want to know *why* an event *isn't* happening. But where can you set a break point for something that *isn't* happening? The answer, as of right now, is: you can't.

There are two techniques that can help in this regard, one provided by htmx, the other provided by Chrome, the browser by google.

### Logging htmx Events

The first technique, provided by htmx itself, is to call the `htmx.logAll()` method. When you do this, htmx will log all the internal events that occur as it goes about its business, loading up content, responding to events and so forth.

This can be overwhelming, but with judicious filtering can help you zero in on a problem. Here are what (a bit of) the logs look like when clicking on the "docs" link on <https://htmx.org>, with `logAll()` enabled:

#### *htmx Logs*

```
htmx:configRequest
<a href="/docs/">
Object { parameters: {}, unfilteredParameters: {}, headers: {...}, target: body, verb:
"get", errors: [], withCredentials: false, timeout: 0, path: "/docs/",
triggeringEvent: a
, ... }
htmx.js:439:29
htmx:beforeRequest
<a href="/docs/">
Object { xhr: XMLHttpRequest, target: body, requestConfig: {...}, etc: {}, pathInfo:
{...}, elt: a
}
htmx.js:439:29
htmx:beforeSend
<a class="htmx-request" href="/docs/">
Object { xhr: XMLHttpRequest, target: body, requestConfig: {...}, etc: {}, pathInfo:
{...}, elt: a.htmx-request
}
htmx.js:439:29
htmx:xhr:loadstart
<a class="htmx-request" href="/docs/">
Object { lengthComputable: false, loaded: 0, total: 0, elt: a.htmx-request
}
htmx.js:439:29
htmx:xhr:progress
<a class="htmx-request" href="/docs/">
Object { lengthComputable: true, loaded: 4096, total: 19915, elt: a.htmx-request
}
htmx.js:439:29
htmx:xhr:progress
<a class="htmx-request" href="/docs/">
Object { lengthComputable: true, loaded: 19915, total: 19915, elt: a.htmx-request
}
htmx.js:439:29
htmx:beforeOnLoad
<a class="htmx-request" href="/docs/">
Object { xhr: XMLHttpRequest, target: body, requestConfig: {...}, etc: {}, pathInfo:
{...}, elt: a.htmx-request
}
htmx.js:439:29
htmx:beforeSwap
<body hx-ext="class-tools, preload">
```

Yikes! Not exactly easy on the eyes, is it? But, if you take a deep breath and squint, you can see that



it isn't *that* bad: a series of htmx events, some of which we have seen before (there's `htmx:configRequest`!), get logged to the console, along with the element they are triggered on. After a bit of reading and filtering, you will be able to make sense of the event stream, and it can help you debug htmx-related issues.

## Monitoring Events in Chrome

The preceding technique is useful if the problem is occurring somewhere *within* htmx, but what if htmx is never getting triggered at all? This comes up some times, like when, for example, you have accidentally typed an event name incorrectly somewhere.

In cases like this you will need recourse to a tool available in the browser itself. Fortunately, the Chrome browser by Google provides a very useful function, `monitorEvents()`, that allows you to monitor *all* events that are triggered on an element. This feature is available *only* in the console, so you can't use it in code on your page. But, if you are working with htmx in Chrome, and are curious why an event isn't triggering on an element, you can open the developers console and type the following:

*htmx Logs*

```
monitorEvents(document.getElementById("some-element"));
```

This will then print *all* the events that are triggered on the element with the id `some-element` to the console. This can be very useful for understanding exactly which events you want to respond to with htmx, or troubleshooting why an expected event isn't occurring.

Using these two techniques will help you as you (infrequently, we hope!) troubleshoot event-related issues when developing with htmx.

## 9.6. Security Considerations

In general, htmx and hypermedia tends to be more secure than JavaScript heavy approaches to building web applications. This is because, by moving much of the processing to the back end, the hypermedia approach tends not to expose as much surface area of your system to end users for manipulation and shenanigans.

However, even with hypermedia, there are still situations that require care when doing development. Of particular concern are situations where user-generated content is shown to other users: a clever user might try to insert htmx code that tricks the other users into clicking on content that triggers actions they don't want to take.

In general, all user-generated content should be escaped on the server side, and most server side rendering frameworks provide functionality for handling this situation. But there is always a risk that something slips through the cracks.

In order to help you sleep better at night, htmx provides the `hx-disable` attribute. When this attribute is placed on an element, all htmx attributes within that element will be ignored.

## Content Security Policies & htmx

A Content Security Policy (CSP) is a browser technology that allows you to detect and prevent certain types of content injection-based attacks. A full discussion of CSPs is beyond the scope of this book, but we refer you to the Mozilla Developer Network article on them for more information: <https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/HTTP/CSP>

A common feature to disable using a CSP is the `eval()` feature of JavaScript, which allows you to evaluate arbitrary javascript code from a string. This has proven to be a security issue and many teams have decided that it is not worth the risk to keep it enabled in their web applications.

htmx does not make heavy use of `eval()` and, thus, a CSP with this restriction in place will be fine. The one feature that does rely on `eval()` is event filters, discussed above. If you decide to disable `eval()` for your web application, you will not be able to use the event filtering syntax.

## 9.7. Configuring

There are a large number of configuration options available for htmx. Some examples of things you can configure are:

- The default swap style
- The default swap delay
- The default timeout of AJAX requests

A full list of configuration options can be found in the config section of the main htmx documentation: <https://htmx.org/docs/#config>

htmx is typically configured via a `meta` tag, found in the header of a page. The name of the meta tag should be `htmx-config`, and the content attribute should contain the configuration overrides, formatted as JSON. Here is an example:

*An htmx configuration via a `meta` tag*

```
<meta name="htmx-config" content='{"defaultSwapStyle":"outerHTML"}'>
```

In this case, we are overriding the default swap style from the usual `innerHTML` to `outerHTML`. This might be useful if you find yourself using `outerHTML` more frequently than `innerHTML` and want to avoid having to explicitly set that swap value throughout your application.

## 9.8. Summary

- In this chapter we looked at some details and tricks of htmx development
- We looked in detail at the options available for `hx-swap` and `hx-trigger`, including filters and scrolling
- We took a look at the events that htmx triggers and responds to
- We explored HTTP response headers and HTTP response codes in htmx, and how to modify how

htmx handles them

- We looked at various techniques for updating content beyond the target of a request, including out of band swaps
- We saw how htmx applications can be debugged, secured and configured

# Chapter 10. Client Side Scripting

This chapter covers

- How scripting can be effectively added to a Hypermedia Driven Application
- Adding a three-dot menu in our contacts table
- Adding a toolbar for bulk actions that appears when selecting contacts
- Adding a keyboard shortcut for focusing the search input

## Scripting in Hypermedia-Driven Applications

REST allows client functionality to be extended by downloading and executing code in the form of applets or scripts. This simplifies clients by reducing the number of features required to be pre-implemented.

— Roy Fielding, *Architectural Styles and the Design of Network-based Software Architectures*

Thus far we have avoided writing any JavaScript in `Contact.app`, mainly because the functionality we implemented so far has not required it. We have shown that, contrary to what some people content, hypermedia is not simply for "documents", but is also an excellent technology for building "applications", with many affordances for building compelling interactive experiences. A goal of this book is to show that it is possible to build sophisticated web applications using the original technology of the web, hypermedia, without the application developer needing to reach for the abstractions provided by JavaScript frameworks.

On the other hand, *htmx itself* is written in JavaScript, and we don't want the message of this book to be interpreted as "JavaScript bad", or, more generally, "Client-side scripting bad."

The question isn't "Should we be scripting for the web?" but, rather, "How should we be using scripting for the web?"

Scripting has been a massive force multiplier of the power of the web. Using scripting, web application developers are not only able to enhance their hypertext-based websites, but are able to create fully-fledged client-side applications that can often compete with native, thick client applications. However, with this power, the browser has often become a distribution mechanism for what are effectively cross-platform thick clients, with the original, REST-ful web architecture being discarded in favor of a more JavaScript-centric and data-oriented approach.

Note, again, we do not claim this is a bad thing! It is a testament to the power of the web and, in particular, of modern browsers, that developers are able to build such sophisticated JavaScript-centric applications.

However, we want to show that, in addition to this more JavaScript-centric style, scripting *can also* be done in a manner compatible and consistent with Hypermedia-Driven Applications.

We feel that you are scripting in an HDA-compatible manner if the following two constraints are adhered to:

- First, the main data format exchanged between server and client must be hypermedia, the same as it would be with no scripting.
- Second, client-side state, outside the DOM itself, is kept to a minimum.

Satisfying these constraints requires us to adopt different practices and patterns than what is typically recommended for JavaScript, since the most common advice often comes, naturally, from JavaScript-centric applications.

Simply listing "best practices" is rarely convincing or edifying (and, lets be frank, it is boring). Instead, we will demonstrate them by implementing client-side features in `Contact.app`:

- We will add an overflow menu to hold the *Edit*, *View* and *Delete* actions, to clean up visual clutter in our list of contacts
- We will add an improved interface for bulk deletion
- We will add a keyboard shortcut for focusing the search box

The important concept in the implementation of each of these features is that, while they are implemented entirely client-side using scripting, they don't exchange information with the server using, for example, JSON, and they don't store a significant amount of state outside the DOM itself.

By satisfying these two constraints with our scripting, we will keep these features within the bounds of the Hypermedia Driven Application approach.

## 10.1. Scripting tools for the Web

The primary scripting language for the web is, of course, JavaScript, which is ubiquitous in web development today. A bit of interesting internet lore, however, is that JavaScript was not always the only built-in option. As the quote from Roy Fielding at the start of this chapter indicates, "applets" written in other languages such as Java were considered part of the scripting infrastructure of the web. In addition, there was a brief period when Internet Explorer supported VBScript, a scripting language based on Visual Basic.

Today, we have a variety of *transcompilers* (often shortened to *transpilers*) that convert many languages to JavaScript, such as TypeScript, Dart, Kotlin, ClojureScript, F#. There is also the WebAssembly (WASM) bytecode format, which is supported as a compilation target for C, Rust, and the WASM-first language AssemblyScript.

However, most of these options are not geared towards an HDA-compatible style of scripting. Compile-to-JS languages are often paired with SPA-oriented libraries (Dart and AngularDart, ClojureScript and Reagent, F# and Elmish), and WASM is currently mainly geared toward linking to existing C/C++ libraries from JavaScript.

Because of this, we are going to focus on three client-side scripting technologies that *are* geared, or at least highly-compatible with, the Hypermedia Driven Application approach:

- Vanilla JS, that is, using JavaScript without depending on any framework.
- Alpine.js, a JavaScript library for adding behavior directly in HTML.
- `_hyperscript`, a non-JavaScript scripting language created alongside htmx. Like AlpineJS, it is

usually embedded in HTML.

Let's take a quick look at each of these scripting options, so we know what we are dealing with.

Note that, as with CSS, we are not going to take a deep dive into any of these technologies. Instead, we are going to show just enough to give you a flavor of how they work and, we hope, spark your interest in looking into each of them more extensively.

## 10.2. Vanilla JavaScript

No code is faster than no code.

— Merb

Vanilla JavaScript is simply using JavaScript in your application without any intermediate layers. The term "Vanilla" came into vogue as a play on the fact that there are so many ".js" frameworks out there to help you write JavaScript. As JavaScript matured as a scripting language, standardized across browsers and provided more and more functionality, the utility of many of these frameworks and libraries has diminished.

(Ironically, at the same time, SPAs have become more popular, which require even more elaborate JavaScript frameworks!)

A quote from the website <http://vanilla-js.com> captures the situation well:

VanillaJS is the lowest-overhead, most comprehensive framework I've ever used.

— <http://vanilla-js.com>

The message of *VanillaJS* here is: "The browser already has JavaScript baked into it, there isn't any need to download a framework for your application to function!"

With JavaScript having matured as a scripting language, this is certainly the case for many applications. It is especially true the case in HDAs, since, by using hypermedia, your application doesn't need many features typically provided by JavaScript frameworks:

- Client-side routing
- An abstraction over DOM manipulation, i.e.: templates that automatically update when referenced variables change
- Server side rendering (rendering here refers to HTML generation)
- Attaching dynamic behavior to server-rendered tags on load
- Network requests

Without all this complexity being handled in JavaScript, your framework needs are dramatically reduced.

One of the best things about VanillaJS is how you install it: you don't have to! You can just start

writing JavaScript in your web application, and it will simply work. Amazing!

That's the good news. The bad news is that, despite improvements over the last decade, JavaScript has some significant limitations as a scripting language that can make it a less than ideal as a stand-alone scripting technology for Hypermedia Driven Applications:

- It is a relatively complex language that has accreted a lot of features and warts.
- JavaScript has a complicated and confusing set of features for working with asynchronous code, that is, code that requires waiting for an asynchronous operation (such as an AJAX request) to complete
- Working with events in JavaScript is surprisingly difficult
- DOM APIs (a large portion of which were originally designed for Java) are verbose and frequently do not make common functionality easy to use.

None of these limitations are deal-breakers, of course, and many people prefer the "close to the browser" nature of vanilla JavaScript over more elaborate client-side scripting approaches.

## 10.3. A Simple Counter

To dive into vanilla JavaScript as a front end scripting option, let's create a simple counter widget. Counter widgets are a common "Hello World" example demonstrated by JavaScript frameworks, so looking at how it can be done in vanilla JavaScript will be instructive.

Our counter widget will be very simple: it will have a number, shown as text, and a button that increments the number.

Now, one problem with tackling this problem in vanilla JavaScript is that it lacks one thing most JavaScript frameworks provide: a default code and architectural style. With vanilla JavaScript, there are no rules!

This lack of structure, however, isn't all bad: it presents a great opportunity to take a small journey through various styles that people have developed for writing their JavaScript.

### An Inline Implementation

To begin, let's start with the simplest thing imaginable: all of our JavaScript will be written inline, directly in the HTML. When the button is clicked, we will look up the `output` element holding the number, and increment the number contained within it.

```
<section class="counter">
  <output id="my-output">0</output> ❶
  <button
    onclick=" ❷
      document.querySelector('#my-output') ❸
        .textContent++ ❹
    "
  >Increment</button>
</section>
```

- ❶ Our output element has an ID to help us find it
- ❷ We use the `onclick` attribute to add an event listener
- ❸ Find the output via a `querySelector()` call
- ❹ JavaScript allows us use the `++` operator on strings

Not too bad!

The code is a little gronky, if you aren't used to the DOM APIs. It's a little annoying that we needed to add an `id` to the `output` element to make things work. The `document.querySelector()` function is a bit verbose compared with, say, the `$` function (a common function used in jQuery, an older, popular JavaScript library.)

But (but!) it works, it's easy enough to understand, and, crucially, it doesn't require any other JavaScript libraries.

So that's the simple, inline approach.

## Separating Our Scripting Out

While the inline implementation is simple, a more standard way to write this code would be to move the code into a separate JavaScript file. This JavaScript file would then either be linked to via a `<script src>` tag or placed into an inline `<script>` element by a build process.

Here we see the HTML and JavaScript *separated out* from one another, in different files. The HTML is now "cleaner" in that there is no JavaScript in it. The JavaScript is a bit more complex than in our inline version: we need to look up the button using a query selector and add an *event listener* to handle the click event and increment the counter.

### Counter HTML

```
<section class="counter">
  <output id="my-output">0</output>
  <button class="increment-btn">Increment</button>
</section>
```



```
const counterOutput = document.querySelector("#my-output") ①
const incrementBtn = document.querySelector(".counter .increment-btn") ②

incrementBtn.addEventListener("click", e => { ③
  counterOutput.innerHTML++ ④
})
```

- ① Find the output element
- ② and the button
- ③ We use `addEventListener`, which is preferable to `onclick` for many reasons
- ④ The logic stays the same, only the structure around it changes

In moving the JavaScript out to another file, we are following a software design principle known as *Separation of Concerns (SoC)*. Separation of Concerns posits that the various "concerns" (or aspects) of a software project should be divided up into multiple files, so that they don't "pollute" one another. JavaScript isn't markup, so it shouldn't be in your HTML, it should be *elsewhere*. Styling information, similarly, isn't markup, and so it belongs in a separate file as well (A CSS file, for example.) For quite some time, this Separation of Concerns was considered the "orthodox" way to build web applications.

A stated goal of Separation of Concerns is that we should be able to modify and evolve each concern independently, with confidence that we won't break any of the other concerns.

However, let's look at exactly how this principle has worked out in our simple counter example. If you look closely at the new HTML, it turns out that we've had to add a class to the button. We added this class so that we could look the button up in JavaScript and add in an event handler for the "click" event. Now, in both the HTML and the JavaScript, this class name is just a string and there isn't any process to *verify* that the button has the right classes on it or its parents to ensure that the event handler is actually added to the right element.

Unfortunately, it has turned out that the careless use of CSS selectors in JavaScript can cause what is known as *jQuery soup*. jQuery soup is a situation where:

- The JavaScript that attaches a given behavior to a given element is difficult to find.
- Code reuse is difficult.
- The code ends up wildly disorganized and "flat", with lots of unrelated event handlers mixed together.

The name "jQuery Soup" comes from the fact that early JavaScript-heavy applications were typically built in jQuery, which, perhaps inadvertently, tended to encourage this style of JavaScript.

So, you can see that the notion of "Separation of Concerns" doesn't always work out as well as promised: our concerns end up intertwined pretty deeply, even when we separate them into different files.

To show that it isn't just naming between concerns that can get you into trouble, consider another

small change to our HTML that demonstrates the problems with our separation of concerns. Imagine that we decide to change the number field from an `<output>` tag to an `<input type="number">`.

This small change to our HTML will break our JavaScript, despite the fact we have "separated" our concerns!

The fix for this issue is simple enough (we would need to change the `.textContent` property to `.value` property), but this demonstrates the burden of synchronizing markup changes and code changes across multiple files. Keeping everything in sync can become increasingly difficult as your application size increases .

[separation of concerns expectation v reality] | *separation-of-concerns-expectation-v-reality.png*

The fact that small changes to our HTML can break our scripting indicates that the two are *tightly coupled*, despite being broken up into multiple files. This tight coupling suggests that separation between HTML and JavaScript (and CSS) is often an illusory separation of concerns: the concerns are sufficiently related to one another that they aren't easily separated.

In Contact.app we are not *concerned* with "structure", "styling" or "behavior"; we are concerned with collecting contact info and presenting it to users. SoC, in the way it's formulated in web development orthodoxy, is not really an inviolate architectural guideline, but rather a stylistic choice that, as we can see, can even become a hindrance.

## Locality

It turns out that there is a burgeoning reaction *against* Separation of Concerns. Consider the following web technologies and techniques:

- JSX
- LitHTML
- CSS-in-JS
- Single-File Components
- Filesystem based routing

Each of these technologies *colocate* code in various languages that address a single *feature* (typically a UI widget).

All of them mix *implementation* concerns together in order to present a unified abstraction to the end-user. Separating technical detail concerns just isn't as much of an, ahem, concern.

## Locality of Behavior

Locality of Behavior (LoB) is an alternative software design principle that we coined, in opposition to Separation of Concerns. It describes the following characteristic of a piece of software:

The behaviour of a unit of code should be as obvious as possible by looking only at that unit of code.

— <https://htmx.org/essays/locality-of-behaviour/>

In simple terms: you should be able to tell what a button does by simply looking at the code or markup that creates that button. This does not mean you need to inline the entire implementation, but that you shouldn't need to hunt for it or require prior knowledge of the codebase to find it.

We will demonstrate Locality of Behavior in all of our examples, both the counter demos and the features we add to ContactApp. Locality of behavior is an explicit design goal of both `_hyperscript` and `Alpine.js` (which we will cover later) as well as `htmx`.

All of these tools achieve Locality of Behavior by having you embed attributes directly within your HTML, as opposed to having code look up elements in a document through CSS selectors in order to add event listeners onto them.

In a Hypermedia Driven Application, we feel that Locality of Behavior is often more important than Separation of Concerns.

## What To Do With Our Counter?

So, should we go back to the `onlick` attribute way of doing things? That approach certainly wins in Locality of Behavior, and has the additional benefit that it is baked into HTML.

Unfortunately, however, the `on*` JavaScript attributes also come with some drawbacks:

- They don't support custom events.
- There is no good mechanism for associating long-lasting variables with an element --- all variables are discarded when an event listener completes executing.
- If you have multiple instances of an element, you will need to repeat the listener code on each, or use something more clever like event delegation.
- JavaScript code that directly manipulates the DOM gets verbose, and clutters the markup.
- An element cannot listen for events on another element.

Consider this common situation: you have a popup, and you want it to be dismissed when a user clicks outside of it. The listener will need to be on the body element in this situation, far away from the actual popup markup. This means that the body element would need to have listeners attached to it that deal with many unrelated components. Some of these components may not even be on the

page when it was first rendered, if they are added dynamically after the initial HTML page is rendered!

So vanilla JavaScript and Locality of Behavior don't seem to mesh *quite* as well as we would like them to. The situation is not hopeless, however: it's important to understand that LoB does not require behavior to be *implemented* at a use site, but merely *invoked* there. That is, we don't need to write all our code on a given element, we just need to make it clear that a given element is *invoking* some code, which can be located elsewhere.

Keeping this in mind, it is possible to improve LoB while writing JavaScript in a separate file, provided we have a reasonable system for structuring our JavaScript.

## RSJS

RSJS (the "Reasonable System for JavaScript Structure", <https://ricostacruz.com/rsjs/>) is a set of guidelines for JavaScript architecture targeted at "a typical non-SPA website". RSJS provides a solution to the lack of a standard code style for vanilla JavaScript that we mentioned earlier.

We won't reproduce all the RSJS guidelines here, but here are the ones most relevant for our counter widget:

- "Use **data-** attributes" in HTML - invoking behavior via adding data attributes makes it obvious there is JavaScript happening, as opposed to using random classes or IDs that may be mistakenly removed or changed
- "One component per file" - the name of the file should match the data attribute so that it can be found easily, a win for LoB

To follow the RSJS guidelines, let's restructure our current HTML and JavaScript files. First, we will use *data attributes*, that is, HTML attributes that begin with **data-**, a standard feature of HTML, to indicate that our HTML is a counter component. We will then update our JavaScript to use an attribute selector that looks for the **data-counter** attribute as the root element in our counter component and wires in the appropriate event handlers and logic. Additionally, let's rework the code to use `querySelector()` and add the counter functionality to *all* counter components found on the page. (You never know how many counter's you might want!)

Here is what our code looks like now:

*Counter in vanilla JavaScript, with RSJS*

```
<section class="counter" data-counter> ①  
  <output id="my-output" data-counter-output>0</output> ②  
  <button class="increment-btn" data-counter-increment>Increment</button>  
</section>
```

① Invoke a JavaScript behavior with a data attribute

② Mark relevant descendant elements

```
// counter.js ①
document.querySelectorAll("[data-counter]") ②
  .forEach(el => {
    const
    output = el.querySelector("[data-counter-output]"),
    increment = el.querySelector("[data-counter-increment]"); ③

    increment.addEventListener("click", e => output.textContent++); ④
  });
```

- ① File should have the same name as the data attribute, so that we can locate it easily
- ② Get all elements that invoke this behavior
- ③ Get any child elements we need
- ④ Register event handlers

Using RSJS solves, or at least alleviates, many of the problems we pointed out with our first, unstructured example of vanilla JS being split out to a separate file:

- The JS that attaches behavior to a given element is **clear** (though only through naming conventions).
- Reuse is **easy** --- you can create another counter component on the page it will just work.
- The code is **well-organized** --- one behavior per file

All in all, RSJS is a good way to structure your vanilla JavaScript in a Hypermedia Driven Application. So long as the JavaScript isn't communicating with a server via a plain data JSON API, or holding a bunch of internal state outside of the DOM, this is perfectly compatible with the HDA approach.

Let's take a look at implementing a feature in Contact.App using the RSJS/vanilla JavaScript approach.

## Vanilla JS in action: an overflow menu

Our homepage has "Edit", "View" and "Delete" links for every contact in our table. This uses a lot of space and creates visual clutter. We're going to place these actions inside a menu with a button to open it.

Let's sketch the markup we want for our overflow menu. First, we need an element, we'll use a `<div>`, to enclose the entire widget and mark it as a menu component. Within this div, we will have a standard `<button>` that will function as the mechanism that shows and hides our menu items. Finally, we'll have another `<div>` that holds the menu items that we are going to show. These menu items will be simple anchor tags, as they are in the current contacts table.

Here is what our updated, RSJS-structured HTML looks like:

```
<div data-overflow-menu> ❶
  <button type="button" aria-haspopup="menu"
    aria-controls="contact-menu-{{ contact.id }}"
    >Options</button> ❷
  <div role="menu" hidden id="contact-menu-{{ contact.id }}"> ❸
    <a role="menuitem" href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/edit">Edit</a> ❹
    <a role="menuitem" href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}">View</a>
    <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</div>
```

- ❶ Mark the root element of the menu component
- ❷ This button will open and close our menu
- ❸ A container for our menu items
- ❹ Menu items

The roles and ARIA attributes are based on the Menu and Menu Button patterns from the ARIA Authoring Practices Guide. They're currently wrong. We'll fix that with JavaScript and RSJS.

## Intermission: WAI-ARIA

As we web developers create more interactive, app-like websites, HTML's repertoire of elements won't have all we need. Using CSS and JS, we can endow existing elements with the behavior and appearance of native controls.

However, there is one thing web apps used to be unable to replicate. While these widgets were similar enough in appearance for abled users to operate, assistive technology (e.g. screen readers) could only report the underlying HTML elements. Even if you got all the keyboard interactions right, disabled users often only got mystery meat.

ARIA was created by W3C's Web Accessibility Initiative (WAI) in 2008 to address this. At a surface level, it's a set of attributes you can add to HTML to make it meaningful to assistive software. It has two main parts that interact.

The first is **role**. This attribute has a predefined set of values: **menu**, **dialog**, **radiogroup**... These attributes **do not add any behavior**. Rather, they are a promise you make to the user: *I will make this element work like a menu*. If you add the role but don't uphold this promise, the experience will be worse than before. Hence the mantra:

**No ARIA is better than Bad ARIA.**

— WAI, "Read Me First | APG", <https://www.w3.org/WAI/ARIA/apg/practices/read-me-first/>

The second is a whole range of attributes all sharing a prefix: **aria-expanded**, **aria-controls**, **aria-label**... These attributes can specify the state of a widget, the relationships between components, or additional semantics. Once again, these are promises, not demands.

Rather than learn all the roles and attributes and try to combine them into a usable widget, the best course of action for most developers is to rely on the ARIA Authoring Practices Guide (APG), a web resource with practical information aimed directly at web developers.

If you're new to ARIA, check out the following links:

- Read this first: <https://www.w3.org/WAI/ARIA/apg/practices/read-me-first/>
- UI patterns: <https://www.w3.org/WAI/ARIA/apg/patterns/>
- Good practices: <https://www.w3.org/WAI/ARIA/apg/practices/>

And remember: **run accessibility tests**. You wouldn't ship a website you'd never looked at.

Let's begin with the RSJS boilerplate: query for all elements with some data attribute, iterate over them, get any relevant descendants. We've modified the RSJS boilerplate a bit to integrate with htmx.

```
function overflowMenu(subtree = document) {
  document.querySelectorAll("[data-overflow-menu]").forEach(menuRoot => { ❶
    const
    button = menuRoot.querySelector("[aria-haspopup]"), ❷
    menu = menuRoot.querySelector("[role=menu]"), ❷
    items = [...menu.querySelectorAll("[role=menuitem]")]; ❸
  });
}

addEventListener("htmx:load", e => overflowMenu(e.target)); ❹
```

- ❶ With RSJS, you'll be writing `document.querySelectorAll(...).forEach` a lot.
- ❷ To keep the HTML clean, we use ARIA attributes rather than custom data attributes here. Our outer container still has a data attribute, so this shouldn't be much of an issue.
- ❸ We use the spread operator to convert the inconvenient `NodeList` returned by `querySelectorAll` into a normal `Array`.
- ❹ Initialize all overflow menus when the page is loaded or content is inserted by htmx.

Conventionally, we'd keep track of whether the menu is open with a variable or a property in a state object. This approach is almost always the right thing in large, client-heavy apps. However, it has some drawbacks. We'll need to keep the DOM in sync with the state (harder without a framework), and lose the ability to serialize the HTML (as the open state won't be stored there).

Instead, we'll lean on the `hidden` attribute on the menu to tell us it's closed. If the HTML of the page is snapshotted and restored, the menu can be restored as well by re-running the JS.

```
items = [...menu.querySelectorAll("[role=menuitem]")];

const isOpen = () => !menu.hidden; ❶

});
```

- ❶ The `hidden` attribute is helpfully reflected as a `hidden` *property*, so we don't need to use `getAttribute`.

We'll make the menu items non-tabbable. to manage their focus ourselves.

```
const isOpen = () => !menu.hidden; ❶

items.forEach(item => item.setAttribute("tabindex", "-1"));

});
```

Let's implement toggling the menu:



```

items.forEach(item => item.setAttribute("tabindex", "-1"));

function toggleMenu(open = !isOpen()) { ❶
  if (open) {
    menu.hidden = false;
    button.setAttribute("aria-expanded", "true");
    items[0].focus(); ❷
  } else {
    menu.hidden = true;
    button.setAttribute("aria-expanded", "false");
  }
}

toggleMenu(isOpen()); ❸
button.addEventListener("click", () => toggleMenu()); ❹
menuRoot.addEventListener("blur", e => console.log(e) || toggleMenu(false)); ❺

})

```

- ❶ Optional parameter to specify desired state. This allows us to use one function to open, close, or toggle the menu.
- ❷ Focus first item of menu when opened.
- ❸ Call `toggleMenu` with current state, to initialize element attributes.
- ❹ Toggle menu when button is clicked.
- ❺ Close menu when focus moves away.

Let's also make the menu close when we click outside it. This will require an event listener on the whole window. Be careful with this kind of listener; you may find that listeners accumulate as components add listeners and not remove them when they are long gone, that is to say, you will get memory leaks.

Unfortunately, there's not an easy way to do stuff when an element is removed. The best option is `MutationObserver`, a very useful but heavy API.

The pattern (well, *a* pattern) to avoid this is to check if the attaching component is in the DOM as part of the listener, and remove the listener if so. It's form of *garbage collection*. As is (usually) the case with garbage collection, it removes listeners a nondeterministic amount of time after they are no longer needed. With a frequent event like "the user clicks anywhere in the page", it works well enough.

```

button.addEventListener("click", () => toggleMenu())

window.addEventListener("click", function clickAway(event) {
  if (!menuRoot.isConnected) window.removeEventListener("click", clickAway);
  if (!menuRoot.contains(event.target)) toggleMenu(false);
});
});

```

- ① This line is the garbage collection
- ② If the click is outside the menu, close the menu

Now, it's time for keyboard interactions. These are pretty similar to one another and not that intricate. Let's get them all done.

```

const currentIndex = () => { ①
  const idx = items.indexOf(document.activeElement);
  if (idx === -1) return 0;
  return idx;
}

menu.addEventListener("keydown", e => {
  if (e.key === "ArrowUp") {
    items[currentIndex() - 1]?.focus(); ②

  } else if (e.key === "ArrowDown") {
    items[currentIndex() + 1]?.focus(); ③

  } else if (e.key === "Space") {
    items[currentIndex()].click(); ④

  } else if (e.key === "Home") {
    items[0].focus(); ⑤

  } else if (e.key === "End") {
    items[items.length - 1].focus(); ⑥

  } else if (e.key === "Escape") {
    toggleMenu(false); ⑦
    button.focus(); ⑧
  }
});

```

- ① Helper: Get the index in the items array of the currently focused menu item (0 if none).
- ② Move focus to the previous menu item when the up arrow key is pressed
- ③ Move focus to the next menu item when the down arrow key is pressed
- ④ Activate the currently focused element when the space key is pressed
- ⑤ Move focus to the first menu item when Home is pressed

- ⑥ Move focus to the last menu item when End is pressed
- ⑦ Close menu when Escape is pressed
- ⑧ Return focus to menu button when closing menu

I'm pretty sure that covers all our bases. That's a lot of code! But it's code that encodes a lot of behavior.

Though, we still don't support submenus, or menu items being added or removed dynamically. If we need more features, it might make more sense to use an off-the-shelf library --- for instance, GitHub's `details-menu-element`. For our relatively simple use case, however, this library does a beautiful job.

## 10.4. Alpine.js

OK, so that's an in-depth look at how to structure plain "vanilla" JavaScript. Now let's turn our attention to a JavaScript framework that enables a different approach for adding dynamic behavior to your application, Alpine.js (<https://alpinejs.dev>). Alpine is a relatively new JavaScript library which allows you to embed your code directly in HTML, akin to the `on*` attributes available in plain HTML and JavaScript, but takes this concept much further. Alpine bills itself as a modern replacement for jQuery, a widely used, older JavaScript library, and, as you will see, it lives up to that promise.

Installing Alpine is very easy: it is a single file and is dependency-free, so you can simply include it via a CDN:

### *Installing Alpine*

```
<script src="https://unpkg.com/alpinejs"></script>
```

You can also install it via a package manager such as NPM, or vendor it from your own server.

Alpine provides a set of HTML attributes, all of which begin with the `x-` prefix, the main one of which is `x-data`. The content of `x-data` is a JavaScript expression which evaluates to an object. The properties of this object can, then, be access within the element that the `x-data` attribute is located on.

Let's look at our counter example, and how to implement it using Alpine. For the counter, the only state we need to keep track of is the current number, so let's declare a JavaScript object with one property, `count`, in an `x-data` attribute on the `div` for our counter:

### *Counter with Alpine, line 1*

```
<div class="counter" x-data="{ count: 0 }">
```

This defines our state, that is, the data we are going to be using to drive dynamic updates to the DOM. With the state declared like this, we can now use it *within* the `div` element it is declared on. Let's add an `output` element with an `x-text` attribute. We will *bind* the `x-text` attribute to the `count` attribute we declared in the `x-data` attribute on the parent `div` element. This will have the effect of

setting the text of the **output** element to whatever the value of **count** is: if **count** is updates, so will the text of the **output**. This is "reactive" programming, in that the DOM will "react" to changes to the backing data.

*Counter with Alpine, lines 1-2*

```
<div class="counter" x-data="{ count: 0 }">
  <output x-text="count"></output> ①
```

① The **x-text** attribute.

Next, we need to update the count, using a button. Alpine allows you to attach event listeners with the **x-on** attribute. To specify the event to listen for, you add a colon and then the event name after the **x-on** attribute name. Then, the value of the attribute is the JavaScript you wish to execute. This is similar to the plain **on\*** attributes we discussed earlier, but it turns out to be much more flexible.

We want to listen for a **click** event, and we want to increment **count** when a click occurs, so here is what our Alpine code will look like:

*Counter with Alpine, the full thing*

```
<div class="counter" x-data="{ count: 0 }">
  <output x-text="count"></output>

  <button x-on:click="count++">Increment</button> ①
</div>
```

① With **x-on**, we specify the attribute in the attribute *name*.

And, would you look at that, we're done already! A simple component, like a counter, should be simple, and Alpine sure delivers on that!

## **x-on:click** vs. **onclick**

As we said, the Alpine **x-on:click** attribute (or its shorthand, the **@click** attribute) is similar to the built-in **onclick** attribute. However, it has additional features that make it significantly more useful:

- You can listen for events from other elements. For example, the **.outside** modifier lets you listen to any click event that is **not** within the element.
- You can use other modifiers to:
  - throttle or debounce event listeners,
  - ignore events that are bubbled up from descendant elements, or
  - attach passive listeners.
- You can listen to custom events. For example, if you wanted to listen for the **htmx:after-request** event you could write **x-on:htmx:after-request="doSomething()"**

## Reactivity and Templating

We hope that you'll agree that the AlpineJS version of the counter widget is better, in general, than the VanillaJS implementation, which was either somewhat hacky or spread out over multiple files.

A big part of the power of AlpineJS is that it supports a notion of "reactive" variables, allowing you to bind the count of the `div` element to a variable that both the `output` and the `button` can reference, and properly updating all the dependencies when a mutation occurs. Alpine allows for much more elaborate data bindings than what we have demonstrated here, and it is an excellent general purpose client-side scripting library.

### Alpine.js in Action: A Bulk Action Toolbar

Next, let's implement a feature in `Contact.app` with Alpine. As it stands currently, `Contact.app` has a "Delete Selected Contacts" button at the very bottom of the page. This button has a long name, is not easy to find and takes up a lot of room. If we wanted to add additional "bulk" actions, this wouldn't really scale very well visually.

In this section, we'll replace this single button with a toolbar. Furthermore, the toolbar will only appear when the user starts selecting contacts. Finally, it will show how many contacts are selected and let you select all contacts in one go.

The first thing we will need to add is an `x-data` attribute, to hold the state that we will use to determine if the toolbar is visible or not. We will need to place this on a parent element of both the toolbar that we are going to add, as well as of the checkboxes, which will be updating the state when they are checked and unchecked. The best option given our current HTML is to place the attribute on the `form` element that surrounds the contacts table. We will declare a property, `selected`, which will be an array that holds the selected contact ids, based on the checkboxes that are selected.

Here is what our form tag will look like:

```
<form x-data="{ selected: [] }"> ①
```

① This is the form that was wrapped around the contacts table.

Next, at the top of the contacts table, we are going to add a `template` tag. A template tag is *not* rendered by a browser, by default, so you might be surprised that we are using it. However, by adding an Alpine `x-if` attribute, we can tell Alpine: if a condition is true, show the HTML within this template.

Recall that we want to show the toolbar if and only if one or more contacts are selected. But we know that we will have the ids of the selected contacts in the `selected` property. Therefore, we can check the `length` of that array to see if there are any selected contacts, quite easily:

```

<template x-if="selected.length > 0"> ①
  <div class="box info tool-bar">
    <slot x-text="selected.length"></slot>
    contacts selected

    <button type="button" class="bad bg color border">Delete</button> ②
    <hr aria-orientation="vertical">
    <button type="button">Cancel</button>
  </div>
</template>

```

① Show this HTML if there are 1 or more selected contacts

② We will implement these buttons in just a moment

The next step is to ensure that toggling a checkbox for a given contact adds (or removes) a given contact's id from the `selected` property. To do this, we will need to use a new Alpine attribute, `x-model`. The `x-model` attribute allows you to *bind* a given element to some underlying data, or it's "model".

In this case, we want to bind the value of the checkbox inputs to the `selected` property. This is how we do this:

```

<td>
  <input type="checkbox" name="selected_contact_ids" value="{{ contact.id }}" x-
  model="selected"> ①
</td>

```

① The `x-model` attribute binds the `value` of this input to the `selected` property

Now, when a checkbox is checked or unchecked, the `selected` array will be updated with the given rows contact id. Furthermore, mutations we make to the `selected` array will similarly be reflected in the checkboxes' state. This is known as a *two-way* binding.

With this code written, we can make the toolbar appear and disappear, based on whether contact checkboxes are selected! Awesome.

## Implementing Actions

Now that we have the mechanics of showing and hiding the toolbar, let's look at how to implement the buttons within the toolbar.

Let's first implement the "Clear" button, because it is quite easy. All we need to do is, when the button is clicked, clear out the `selected` array. Because of the two-way binding that Alpine provides, this will uncheck all the selected contacts (and then hide the toolbar)!

Here is the code:

For the *Cancel* button, our job is quite simple:

```
<button type="button" @click="selected = []">Cancel</button>①
```

① Just reset the `selected` array

Pretty easy!

The "Delete" button, however, will be a bit more complicated. It will need to do two things: first it will confirm if the user indeed intends to delete the contacts selected, and, if the user confirms the action, it will use the htmx JavaScript API to issue a `DELETE` request.

```
<button type="button" class="bad bg color border"
  @click="confirm(`Delete ${selected.length} contacts?`) && ①
  htmx.ajax('DELETE', '/contacts', { source: $root, target: document.body })" ②
>Delete</button>
```

① Confirm the user wishes to delete the selected number of contacts

② Issue a `DELETE` using the htmx JavaScript API

Note that we are using the short-circuiting behavior of the `&&` operator in JavaScript to avoid the call to `htmx.ajax()` if the `confirm()` call returns false.

The `htmx.ajax()` function is just a way to directly access the normal, HTML-driven hypermedia exchange that htmx's attributes give you from JavaScript. We pass in that we want to issue a `DELETE` to `/contacts`. We then pass in two additional pieces of information: `source` and `target`. The `source` properly is the element from which htmx will collect data to include in the request. We set this to `$root`, which is a special symbol in Alpine that will be the element that has the `x-data` attribute declared on it. In this case, it will be the form containing all of our contacts. The `target`, or where the response HTML will be placed, is just the entire document's body, since the `DELETE` handler returns a whole page when it completes.

Note that we are using Alpine here in a Hypermedia Driven Application compatible manner. We *could* have issued an AJAX request directly from Alpine and perhaps updated an `x-data` property depending on the results of that request. But, instead, we delegated to htmx's JavaScript API, which made a *hypermedia exchange* with the server. This is the key to scripting in a Hypermedia Driven Application.

So, with all of this in place, we now have a much improved experience for performing bulk actions on contacts: less visual clutter and the toolbar can be extended with more options without creating bloat in the main interface of our app.

## 10.5. `_hyperscript`

The next scripting technology we are going to look at is a bit further afield: `_hyperscript` (<https://hyperscript.org>) While previous two examples are JavaScript-oriented, `_hyperscript` is an entire new scripting language for front-end development. `_hyperscript` has a completely different syntax than JavaScript, and is based on an older language called HyperTalk. HyperTalk was the scripting language for a technology called HyperCard, an old hypermedia system available on early

Macintosh Computers.

The most noticeable thing about `\hyperscript` is that it resembles English prose more than it resembles other programming languages. `\hyperscript` was initially created as a sibling project to `htmx`, because it was felt that JavaScript wasn't event-oriented enough and made adding small script enhancements to `htmx` applications too cumbersome. Like Alpine, `\hyperscript`, is positioned as a modern jQuery replacement and, further, as alternative to JavaScript.

Also like Alpine, `_hyperscript` allows you to write your scripting inline, in HTML.

Unlike Alpine, `_hyperscript` is *not* reactive. It instead focuses on making DOM manipulations in response to events easy and clear. It has built-in language constructs for many DOM operations, preventing you from needing to navigate the sometimes-verbose JavaScript DOM APIs.

We will not be doing a deep dive on the language, but again just want to give you a flavor of what scripting in `_hyperscript` is like, so you can pursue the language in more depth later if you find it interesting.

Like `htmx` and AlpineJS, `_hyperscript` can be installed via a CDN or from npm (package name [hyperscript.org](https://hyperscript.org)):

*Installing `_hyperscript` via CDN*

```
<script src="//unpkg.com/hyperscript.org"></script>
```

`_hyperscript` uses the `_` (underscore) attribute for putting scripting on DOM elements. You may also use the `script` or `data-script` attributes, depending on your HTML validation needs.

Let's look at how to implement the simple counter component we have been looking at using `\hyperscript`. We will place an `output` element and a `button` inside of a `div`. To implement the counter, we will need to add a small bit of `\hyperscript` to the button. On a click, the button should increment the text of the previous `output` tag.

Well, it turns out that that last sentence is almost valid `\hyperscript`!

Here is our code:

```
<div class="counter">
  <output>0</output>
  <button _="on click increment the textContent of the previous
<output/>">Increment</button> ①
</div>
```

① This is what `_hyperscript` looks like, believe it or not!

Let's go through each component of the `_hyperscript`:

- **on click** This is an event listener, telling the button to listen for a `click` event and then executing the remaining code



- **increment** This is a "command" in `\hyperscript` that, well, increments things, similar to the `++` operator in JavaScript
- **the** "the" doesn't have any semantic meaning `\hyperscript`, but can be used to make scripts more readable
- **textContent of** - This is one form of *property access* in `_hyperscript`. You are probably familiar with the JavaScript syntax `a.b`, meaning "Get the property `b` on object `a`". `\hyperscript` supports this syntax, but `_also_` supports the forms `b of a` and `a's b`. Which one you use should depend on which one is most readable.
- **the previous** The **previous** expression in `hyperscript` finds the previous element in the DOM that matches some condition
- **<output />** This is a *query literal*, which is a CSS selector wrapped between `"<"` and `"/>"`

In this code, the **previous** keyword (and the accompanying **next**) is an example of how `_hyperscript` makes DOM operations easier: there is no such native functionality to be found in the standard DOM API, and implementing it is actually trickier than you might think!

So, you can see, `\hyperscript` is very expressive, particularly when it comes to DOM manipulations. This makes it easier to embed scripts directly in HTML: since the scripting language is more powerful, scripts written in it tend to be shorter and easier to read.

### Natural Language Programming?

Seasoned programmers are often suspicious of `_hyperscript`: There have been many "natural language programming" (NLP) projects that target non-programmers and beginner programmers, assuming that being able to read code in their "natural language" will give them the ability to write it as well. This has led to some badly written and structured code and has failed to live up to the (often over the top) hype.

`_hyperscript` is *not* an NLP programming language. Yes, its syntax is inspired in many places by the speech patterns of web developers. But `_hyperscript`'s readability is achieved not through complex heuristics or fuzzy NLP processing, but rather through judicious use of common parsing tricks, coupled with a culture of readability.

As you can see in the above example, with the use of a *query reference*, `<output/>`, `_hyperscript` does not shy away from using DOM-specific, non-natural language when appropriate.

### `_hyperscript` in action: a keyboard shortcut

While the counter demo is a good way to compare various approaches to scripting, the rubber meets the road when you try to actually implement a useful feature with an approach. For `\hyperscript`, let's add a keyboard shortcut to `Contact.app`: when a user hits Shift-S in our app, we will focus the search field.

Since our keyboard shortcut focuses the search input, let's put the code for it on that search input, satisfying locality.

Here is the original HTML for the search input:

```
<input id="search" name="q" type="search" placeholder="Search Contacts">
```

We will add an event listener using the `on keydown` syntax, which will fire whenever a keydown occurs. Further, we can use an *event filter* syntax in `_hyperscript` using square brackets after the event. In the square brackets we can place a *\_filter expression\_* that will filter out `keydown` events we aren't interested in. In our case, we only want to consider events where the shift key is held down and where the "S" key is being pressed. We can create a boolean expression that inspects the `shiftKey` property (to see if it is `true`) and the `code` property (to see if it is `"KeyS"`) of the event to achieve this.

So far our hyperscript looks like this:

#### *A Start On Our Keyboard Shortcut*

```
on keydown[shiftKey and code is 'KeyS'] ...
```

Now, by default, `_hyperscript` will listen for a given event `_on` the element it is declared `on_`. So, in this case, with the script we have so far, we would only get `keydown` events if the search box is already focused. That's not what we want! We want to have this key work *globally*, no matter which element has focus.

Not a problem! We can listen for the `keyDown` event elsewhere by using a `from` clause in our event handler. In this case we want to listen for the `keyDown` from the window, and our code ends up looking, naturally, like this:

We need to attach the listener to the whole window instead. No problem:

#### *Listening Globally*

```
on keydown[shiftKey and code is 'KeyS'] from window ...
```

Using the `from` clause, we can attach the listener to the window while, at the same time, keeping the code on the element it logically relates to. Very nice!

Now that we've picked out the event we want to use to focus the search box, let's implement the actual focusing by calling the standard `.focus()` method.

Here is the entire script, embedded in HTML

#### *Our Final Script*

```
<input id="search" name="q" type="search" placeholder="Search Contacts"
  _="on keydown[shiftKey and code is 'KeyS'] from the window
  me.focus()"> ①
```

① "me" refers to the element that the script is written on.

Given all the functionality, this is surprisingly terse, and, as an English-like programming language, pretty easy to read.

## Why a new programming language?

This is all well and good, but you may be thinking "An entirely new scripting language? That seems excessive." And, at some level, you are right: JavaScript is a decent scripting language, is very well optimized and is widely understood in web development. On the other hand, by creating an entirely new front end scripting language, we had the freedom to address some problems that we saw generating ugly and verbose code in JavaScript:

### Async transparency

*In hyperscript, asynchronous functions (i.e. functions that return `Promise` instances) can be invoked as if they were synchronous.* Changing a function from sync to async does not break any `_hyperscript` code that calls it. This is achieved by checking for a `Promise` when evaluating any expression, and suspending the running script if one exists (only the current event handler is suspended and the main thread is not blocked). JavaScript, instead, requires either the explicit use of callbacks `_or_` the use of explicit `async` annotations (which can't be mixed with synchronous code).

### Array property access

In `_hyperscript`, accessing a property on an array (other than `length` or a number) will return an array of the values of property on each member of that array, making array property access act like a flat-map operation. jQuery has a similar feature, but only for its own data structure.

### Native CSS Syntax

In `_hyperscript`, you can use things like CSS class and ID literals, or CSS query literals, directly in the language, rather than needing to call out to a wordy DOM API, as you do in JavaScript

### Deep Event Support

Working with events in `_hyperscript` is far more pleasant than working with them in JavaScript, with native support for responding to and sending events, as well as for common event-handling patterns such as "debouncing" or rate limiting events. Hyperscript also provides declarative mechanisms for synchronizing events within a given element and across multiple elements.

Again we wish to stress that, in this example, we are not stepping outside the line of a Hypermedia Driven Application: we are only adding front-end, client-side functionality with our scripting. We are not creating and managing a large amount of state outside of the DOM itself, or communicating with the server in a non-hypermedia exchange. Additionally, since `_hyperscript` embeds so well in HTML, it keeps the focus `_on the hypermedia_`, rather than on the scripting logic.

Taken all together, given a certain style of scripting and certain scripting needs, `_hyperscript` can provide an excellent scripting experience for your Hypermedia Driven Application. Of course, it is small and obscure programming language, so we won't blame you if you decide to pass on it, but it is at least worth a look to understand what it is trying to achieve, if only out of intellectual interest.

## 10.6. Using Off-the-shelf Components

That concludes our look at three different options for *your* scripting infrastructure, that is, the code that *you* write to enhance your Hypermedia Driven Application. However, there is another major area to consider when discussing client side scripting: "off the shelf" components. That is, JavaScript libraries that other people have created that offer some sort of functionality, such as showing modal dialogs.

Components have become very popular in the web development works, with libraries like DataTables (<https://datatables.net/>) providing rich user experiences with very little JavaScript code on the part of a user. Unfortunately, if these libraries aren't integrated well into a website, they can begin to make an application feel "patched together". Furthermore, some libraries go beyond simple DOM manipulation, and require that you integrate with a server end point, almost invariably with a JSON data API. This means you are no longer building a Hypermedia Driven Application, simply because a particular widget demands something different. A shame!

### Integration Options

The best JavaScript libraries to work with when you are building a Hypermedia Driven Application are ones that:

- Mutate the DOM but don't communicate with a server over JSON
- Respect HTML norms (e.g. using `input` elements to store values)
- Trigger many custom events, as the library updates things

The last point, triggering many custom events (over the alternative of using lots of methods and callbacks) is especially important, as these custom events can be dispatched or listened to without additional glue code written in a scripting.

Let's take a look at two different approaches to scripting, one using JavaScript call backs, and one using events.

To make things concrete, let's implement a better confirmation dialog for the `DELETE` button we created in Alpine in the previous section. In the original example we used the `confirm()` function built in to JavaScript, which shows a pretty bare-bones system confirmation dialog. We will replace this function with a popular JavaScript library, SweetAlert2, that shows a much nicern nice looking confirmation dialog. Unlink the `confirm()` function, which blocks and returns a boolean (`true` if the user confirmed, `false` otherwise), SweetAlert2 returns a `Promise` object, which is a JavaScript mechanism for hooking in a callback once an asynchronous action (such as waiting for a user to confirm or deny an action) completes.

### Integrating Using Callbacks

With SweetAlert2 installed as a library, you have access to the `Swal` object, which has a `fire()` function on it to trigger showing an alert. You can pass in arguments to the `fire()` method to configure exactly what the buttons on the confirmation dialog look like, what the title of the dialog is, and so forth. We won't get into these details too much, but you will see what a dialog looks like in a bit.

So, given we have installed the SweetAlert2 library, we can swap it in place of the `confirm()` function call. We then need to restructure the code to pass a *callback* to the `then()` method on the `Promise` that `Swal.fire()` returns. A deep dive into Promises is beyond the scope of this chapter, but suffice to say that this callback will be called when a user confirms or denies the action. If the user confirmed the action, then the `result.isConfirmed` property will be `true`.

Given all that, our updated code will look like this:

#### *A Callback-based Confirmation Dialog*

```
<button type="button" class="bad bg color border"
  @click="Swal.fire({ ❶
    title: 'Delete these contacts?', ❷
    showCancelButton: true,
    confirmButtonText: 'Delete'
  }).then((result) => { ❸
    if (result.isConfirmed) {
      htmx.ajax('DELETE', '/contacts', { source: $root, target:
document.body })
    }
  });"
>Delete</button>
```

- ❶ Invoke the `Swal.fire()` function
- ❷ Configure how the dialog appears
- ❸ Handle the result of the users selection

And now, when this button is clicked, we get a nice looking dialog in our web application:

[screenshot sweet alert] | *screenshot\_sweet\_alert.png*

Much nicer than the system confirmation dialog! Still, this feels a little wrong. This is a lot of code to write just to trigger a slightly nicer `confirm()`, isn't it? And the htmx JavaScript code we are using here feels a little awkward. It would be more natural to move the htmx out to attributes on the button, as we have been doing, and then trigger the request via events.

So let's take a different approach and see how that looks.

### **Integrating Using Events**

To clean this code up, we will pull the `Swal.fire()` code out to a custom JavaScript function we will create called `sweetConfirm()`. `sweetConfirm()` will take the dialog options that are passed into the `fire()` method, as well as the element that is confirming an action. The big difference between the code we already have and `sweetConfirm()` is that `sweetConfirm()`, rather than calling some htmx directly, will, instead, trigger a `confirmed` event on the button when the user confirms they wish to delete.

Here is what our JavaScript function looks like:

```
function sweetConfirm(elt, config) {  
  Swal.fire(config) ①  
    .then((result) => {  
      if (result.isConfirmed) {  
        elt.dispatchEvent(new Event('confirmed')); ②  
      }  
    });  
}
```

- ① Pass the config through to the `fire()` function
- ② If the user confirmed the action, trigger an `confirmed` event

With this method available, we can now tighten up our delete button quite a bit. We can remove all the SweetAlert2 code that we had in the `@click` Alpine attribute, and simply call this new `sweetConfirm()` method, passing in the arguments `$el`, which is the Alpine syntax for getting "the current element" that the script is on, and then the exact configuration we want for our dialog.

If the user confirms the action, a `confirmed` event will be triggered on the button. This means that we can go back to using our trusty htmx attributes! Namely, we can move `DELETE` to an `hx-delete` attribute, and we can use `hx-target` to target the body. And then, and here is the crucial step, we can use the `confirmed` event that is triggered in the `sweetConfirm()` function, to trigger the request, but adding an `hx-trigger` for it!

Here is

```
<button type="button" class="bad bg color border"  
  hx-delete="/contacts" hx-target="body" hx-trigger="confirmed" ①  
  @click="sweetConfirm($el, ②  
    { title: 'Delete these contacts?', ③  
      showCancelButton: true,  
      confirmButtonText: 'Delete'})">
```

- ① htmx attributes are back
- ② We pass the button in to the function, so an event can be triggered on it
- ③ We pass through the SweetAlert2 configuration information

Now, as you can see, this event-based code is much cleaner and certainly more "HTML-ish". The key to this cleaner implementation is that our new `sweetConfirm()` function an event that htmx is able to listen for. This is why a rich event model is important to look for when choosing a library to work with, both with htmx and with Hypermedia Driven Applications in general.

Unfortunately, due to the prevalence and dominance of the JavaScript-first mindset today, many libraries are like SweetAlert2: they expect you to pass a callback in the first style. In these cases you can use the technique we have demonstrated here, wrapping the library in a function that triggers events in a callback, to make the library more hypermedia and htmx-friendly.

## 10.7. Pragmatic Scripting

In case of conflict, consider users over authors over implementors over specifiers over theoretical purity.

— W3C, HTML Design Principles § 3.2 Priority of Constituencies

We have shown you quite a few tools and techniques for scripting in a Hypermedia Driven Application. How should you pick between them? The sad truth is that there will never be a single, always correct answer to this question. Are you committed to vanilla JavaScript-only, perhaps due to company policy? Well, you can use vanilla JavaScript effectively to script your Hypermedia Driven Application. Do you have more leeway and like the look of Alpine.js? That's a great way to add more structured, localized JavaScript to your application, and offers some nice reactive features as well.

Are you perhaps a bit more wild in your technical choices? Maybe `\_hyperscript` would be worth taking a look at. (We think so!)

Sometimes you might even consider picking two (or more!) of these approaches within an application. Each has its own strengths and weaknesses, and all of them are relatively small and self-contained, so picking the right tool for the job at hand might be the best approach.

In general, we encourage a *pragmatic* approach to scripting: whatever feels right is probably right (or, at least, right *enough*) for you. Rather than being concerned about which particular approach is taken for your scripting, we would focus with these more general concerns:

- Avoiding communicating with the server via JSON data APIs
- Avoiding storing large amounts of state outside of the DOM
- Favoring using events, rather than hard-coded callbacks or method calls

But even on these topics, sometimes a web developer has to do what a web developer has to do. If the perfect widget for your application exists but, darn it, it uses a JSON data API, that's OK. Just don't make it a habit!

## 10.8. Summary

- Maximize locality of behavior, sometimes at the expense of separation of concerns.
- Avoid maintaining large amounts of state outside of the DOM.
- Avoid communicating with the server using JSON data APIs.
- Use progressive enhancement.
- If you're mostly going to write reusable, generalized components: use vanilla JavaScript with RSJS.
- If you're mostly going to write one-off, specialized components: use Alpine.js or `\_hyperscript`.
- If you need a common UI pattern that isn't built into HTML: use a library.
- If you're going to write such a library yourself, use vanilla JS with RSJS.

- Don't worry too much about theoretical purity.



# Chapter 11. JSON Data APIs & Hypermedia Driven Applications

This chapter covers

- Contrasting JSON-based Data APIs with hypermedia APIs
- Adding a Data API to our application
- Adding hypermedia controls to our JSON Data API

## JSON Data APIs

In this book we have been focusing on using hypermedia to build Hypermedia Driven Applications. In doing so we are following the original networking architecture of the web, and building a RESTful system, in the original sense of that term.

However, today, we should acknowledge that many web applications are *not* built using this approach. Instead, they use a Single Page Application front end library such as React to build their application, and they interact with the server via a JSON API. This JSON API almost never uses any hypermedia concepts. Rather JSON APIs tend to be a *Data API*, that is, an API that simply returns structured domain data to the client without any hypermedia control information. The client itself must know how to interpret the JSON Data: what end points are associated with the data, how certain fields should be displayed, and so on.

Now, believe it or not, we *have* been creating an API for our web application. This may sound confusing to you! An API? We have just been creating a web application, with paths that return HTML. How is that an API?

It turns out that our web application is, indeed, providing an API. It just happens to be an API that a *hypermedia client*, that is, a browser, understands. We are building an API for the browser to interact with over HTTP, and, thanks to the magic of HTML and hypermedia, the browser doesn't need to know anything about our hypermedia API beyond an entry point URL: all the actions and display information comes, self-contained, within the HTML responses!

Building web applications like this is so natural and simple that you might not think of it as an API at all, but I assure you, it is!

### 11.1. Hypermedia APIs & JSON Data APIs

OK, wo, we have a hypermedia API for Contact.app. Should we include a Data API as well?

Sure! The existence of a hypermedia API *in no way means* that you can't *also* have a Data API. In fact, this is a common situation in traditional web applications: there is the "web application" that is entered through that entry point URL, say <https://mywebapp.example.com/>. And there is also a *separate* JSON API that is accessible through another URL, perhaps <https://api.mywebapp.example.com/v1>.

This is a perfectly reasonable way to split up the hypermedia interface to your application and the Data API you provide to other, non-hypermedia clients.

Now, why would you want to include a Data API along with a hypermedia API? Well, because non-hypermedia clients want to interact with your application as well, of course! For example:

- Perhaps you have a mobile application that isn't built using HyperView. That application will need to interact with your server somehow, and using the existing HTML API would almost certainly be a poor fit! You want programmatic access to your system via a Data API, and JSON is a natural choice for this.
- Perhaps you have automated script that needs to interact with the system on a regular basis. For example, maybe we have a bulk-import job that runs nightly, and needs to import/sync thousands of contacts. While it would be possible to script this against the HTML API, it would also be annoying: parsing HTML in scripts is error prone and tedious. It would be better to have a simple JSON API for this use case.
- Perhaps there are 3rd party clients who wish to integrate with your system's data in some way. Maybe a partner wants to synchronize data nightly. As with the bulk-import example, this isn't a great use case for an HTML-based API, and it would make more sense to provide something more amenable to scripting.

For all of these use cases, a JSON Data API makes sense: in each case the API is not being consumed by a hypermedia client, so presenting an HTML-based hypermedia API would be inefficient and complicated. A simple JSON Data API fits the bill for what we want and, as always, we recommend using the right tool for the job.

### **"What!?! You Want Me To Parse HTML!?!"**

A confusion we often run into in online discussions is that, when we advocate a hypermedia approach to building web applications, is that people think we mean that they should parse the HTML responses from the server, and then dump the data into their SPA framework or mobile applications.

This is, of course, silly.

What we mean, instead, is that you should consider using a hypermedia API *with a hypermedia client*, like the browser, interpreting the hypermedia response itself and presenting it to the user. A hypermedia API can't simply be welded on top of an existing SPA approach. It requires a sophisticated hypermedia client such as the browser to be consumed effectively.

If you are writing code to tease apart your hypermedia only to then treat as data to feed into a client-side model, you are probably doing it wrong!

## **Differences Between Hypermedia APIs & Data APIs**

So, OK, let's accept for a moment that we *are* going to have a Data API for our application, in addition to our hypermedia API. At this point, some developers may be wondering: why have both?

Why not have a single API, the JSON Data API, and have multiple clients use this one API to communicate with it? Isn't it redundant to have both types of APIs for our application?

It's a reasonable point: we do advocate having multiple APIs to your web application if necessary and, yes, this may lead to some redundancy in code. However, there are distinct advantages to both sorts of API and, even more so, distinct requirements for both sorts of APIs. By supporting both of these types of APIs separately you can get the strengths of both, while keeping their varying styles of code and infrastructure needs cleanly split out.

Let's contrast the needs of JSON APIs with Hypermedia APIs:

JSON API Needs	Hypermedia API
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It must remain stable over time: you cannot change the API willy nilly or you risk breaking clients that use the API and expect certain end points to behave in certain ways</li><li>• It must be versioned: related to the first point, when you do make a major change, you need to version the API so that clients that are using the old API continues to work</li><li>• It should be rate limited: since data APIs are often used by other clients, not just your own internal web application, requests should be rate limited, often by user, in order to avoid a single client overloading the system</li><li>• It should be a general API: since the API is for <i>all</i> clients, not just for your web application, you should avoid specialized end points that are driven by your own application needs. Instead, the API should be general and expressive enough to satisfy as many potential client needs as possible.</li><li>• Authentication for these sorts of API is typically token based, which we will discuss in more detail later</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• There is no need to remain stable over time: all URLs are discovered via HTML responses, so you can be much more aggressive in changing the shape of a hypermedia API</li><li>• This means that versioning is not an issue, another strength of the hypermedia approach</li><li>• Rate limiting probably isn't as important beyond the prevention of Distributed Denial of Service (DDoS) attacks</li><li>• The API can be <i>very specific</i> to your application needs: since it is designed only for your particular web application, and since the API is discovered through hypermedia, you can add and remove highly tuned end points for specific features or optimization needs in your application</li><li>• Authentication is typically managed through a session cookie established by a login page</li></ul>

These two different types of APIs have different strengths and needs, so it makes sense to use both. The hypermedia approach can be used for your web application, allowing you to specialize the API for the "shape" of your application. The Data API approach can be used for other, non-hypermedia clients like mobile, integration partners, etc.

Note in particular that, by splitting these two APIs apart from one another, you reduce the pressure that running your web application through your general Data API produces to be constantly changing the API to address application needs. Rather than being thrashed around with every feature change, your Data API can focus on remaining stable and reliable.

This is the core strength splitting your Data API from your Hypermedia API, in our opinion.

### JSON Data APIs vs JSON "REST" APIs

Unfortunately, today, for historical reasons, what we are calling JSON Data APIs are often referred to "REST APIs" in the industry. This is ironic, because, by any reasonable reading of Roy Fielding's work defining what REST means, the vast majority of JSON APIs are *not* RESTful. Not even close!

I am getting frustrated by the number of people calling any HTTP-based interface a REST API. Today's example is the SocialSite REST API. That is RPC. It screams RPC. There is so much coupling on display that it should be given an X rating.

What needs to be done to make the REST architectural style clear on the notion that hypertext is a constraint? In other words, if the engine of application state (and hence the API) is not being driven by hypertext, then it cannot be RESTful and cannot be a REST API. Period. Is there some broken manual somewhere that needs to be fixed?

— Roy Fielding, <https://roy.gbiv.com/untangled/2008/rest-apis-must-be-hypertext-driven>

The story of how "REST API" came to mean "JSON APIs" in the industry is a long and sordid long one, and beyond the scope of this book. However, if you are interested, you can refer to an essay entitled "How Did REST Come To Mean The Opposite of REST?" on the htmx website:

<https://htmx.org/essays/how-did-rest-come-to-mean-the-opposite-of-rest/>

In this book we will use the term "Data API" to describe these JSON APIs, while acknowledging that many people in the industry will continue to call them "REST APIs" for the foreseeable future.

## 11.2. Adding a JSON Data API To Contact.app

Alright, so how are we going to add a JSON Data API to our application? One approach, popularized by the Ruby on Rails web framework, is to use the same URL endpoints as your hypermedia application, but use the HTTP **Accept** header to determine if the client wants a JSON representation or an HTML representation. The HTTP **Accept** header allows a client to specify what sort of Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) types, that is file types, it wants back from the server: JSON, HTML, text and so on.

So, if the client wanted a JSON representation of all contacts, they might issue a **GET** request that looks like this:

```
Accept: application/json
```

```
GET /contacts
```

If we adopted this pattern then our request handler for `/contacts/` would need to be updated to inspect this header and, depending on the value, return a JSON rather than HTML representation for the contacts. Ruby on Rails has support for this pattern baked into the language, making it very easy to switch on the requested MIME type.

Unfortunately, our experience with this pattern has not been great, for reasons that should be clear given the differences we outlined between Data and hypermedia APIs: they have different needs and often take on very different "shapes", and trying to pound them into the same set of URLs ends up creating a lot of tension in the application code.

Given the different needs of the two APIs and our experience managing multiple APIs like this, we think separating the two from one another, and, therefore, breaking the JSON Data API out to its own set of URLs is the right choice. This will allow us to evolve the two APIs separately from one another, and give us room to improve each independently, in a manner consistent with their own individual strengths.

## Picking a Root URL For Our API

Given that we are going to split our JSON Data API routes out from our regular hypermedia routes, where should we place them? One important consideration here is that we want to make sure that we can version our API cleanly in some way, regardless of the pattern we choose. Looking around, a lot of places end up using a sub-domain for their apis, something like <https://api.mywebapp.example.com> and, in fact, often encode versioning in the subdomain: <https://v1.api.mywebapp.example.com>.

While this makes sense for large companies, it seems like a bit of overkill for our modest little Contact.app. Rather than using sub-domains, which are a pain for local development, we will use sub-paths within the existing application:

- We will use `/api` as the root for our Data API functionality
- We will use `/api/v1` as the entry point for version 1 of our Data API

If and when we decide to bump the API version, we can move to `/api/v2` and so on.

This approach isn't perfect, of course, but it will work for our simple application and can be adapted to a subdomain approach or various other methods at a later point, when our Contact.app has taken over the internet and we can afford a large team of API developers. :)

## Our First JSON Endpoint: Listing All Contacts

Let's add our first Data API End point. It will handle an HTTP `GET` request to `/api/v1/contacts`, and return a JSON list of all contacts in the system. In some ways it will look quite a bit like our initial code for the hypermedia route `/contacts`: we will load all the contacts from the contacts database

and then render some text as a response.

We are also going to take advantage of a nice feature of Flask: if you simply return an object from a handler, it will be serialized (that is, converted) into a JSON response. This makes it very easy to build simple JSON APIs in Flask!

Here is our code:

#### *A JSON Data API To Return All Contacts*

```
@app.route("/api/v1/contacts", methods=["GET"]) ❶
def json_contacts():
    contacts_set = Contact.all()
    contacts_dicts = [c.__dict__ for c in contacts_set] ❷
    return {"contacts": contacts_dicts} ❸
```

- ❶ JSON API gets its own path, starting with `/api`
- ❷ Convert the contacts array into an array of simple dictionary (map) objects
- ❸ Return a dictionary that contains a `contacts` property of all the contacts

This Python code might look a little foreign to you if you are not a Python developer, but all we are doing is converting our contacts into an array of simple name/value pairs and returning that array in an enclosing object as the `contacts` property. This object will be serialized into a JSON response automatically by Flask.

With this in place, if we make an HTTP `GET` request to `/api/v1/contacts`, we will see a response that looks something like this:

#### *Some Sample Data From Our API*

```
{
  "contacts": [
    {
      "email": "carson@example.comz",
      "errors": {},
      "first": "Carson",
      "id": 2,
      "last": "Gross",
      "phone": "123-456-7890"
    },
    {
      "email": "joe@example2.com",
      "errors": {},
      "first": "",
      "id": 3,
      "last": "",
      "phone": ""
    },
    ...
  ]
}
```

So, you can see, we now have a way to get a relatively simple JSON representation of our contacts via an HTTP request. Not perfect, but good enough for the purposes of this book! It's certainly good enough to write some basic automated scripts against. For example:

- You could move your contacts to another system on a nightly basis
- You could back your contacts up to a local file
- You could automate an email blast to your contacts

Having this small JSON Data API opens up a lot of automation possibilities that would be messier to achieve with our existing hypermedia API.

## Adding Contacts

Let's move on the next piece of functionality: adding a new contact to the system. Once again, our code is going to look similar in some ways to the code that we wrote for our normal web application. However, here we are also going to see the JSON API and the hypermedia API for our web application begin to obviously diverge.

In the web application, we needed a separate path, `/contacts/new` to host the HTML form for creating a new contact. In the web application we made the decision to issue a `POST` to that same path to keep things consistent.

In the case of the JSON API, there is no such path needed: the JSON API "just is": it doesn't need to provide any hypermedia representation for creating a new contact. You simply know where to issue a `POST` to to create a contact, likely through some provided documentation about the API, and that's it.

Because of that fact, we can put the "create" handler on the same path as the "list" handler: `/api/v1/contacts`, but have it respond only to HTTP `POST` requests.

The code here is relatively straight forward: populate a new contact with the information from the `POST` request, attempt to save it and, if it is not successful, show some error messages. Here is the code:

### *Adding Contacts With Our JSON API*

```
@app.route("/api/v1/contacts", methods=["POST"]) ①
def json_contacts_new():
    c = Contact(None, request.form.get('first_name'), request.form.get('last_name'),
    request.form.get('phone'),
        request.form.get('email')) ②
    if c.save(): ③
        return c.__dict__
    else:
        return {"errors": c.errors}, 400 ④
```

① This handler is on the same path as the first one for our JSON API, but handles `POST` requests

② We create a new Contact based on values submitted with the request

- ③ We attempt to save the contact and, if successful, render it as a JSON object
- ④ If the save is not successful, we render an object showing the errors, with a response code of **400 (Bad Request)**

In some ways similar to our `contacts_new()` handler from our web application (we are creating the contact and attempting to save it) but in other ways very different:

- There is no redirection happening here on a successful creation, because we are not dealing with a hypermedia client like the browser
- In the case of a bad request, we simply return an error response code, **400 (Bad Request)**. This is in contrast with the web application, where we simply re-render the form with error messages in it.

It is these sorts of differences that, over time, build up and make the idea of keeping your JSON and hypermedia APIs on the same set of URLs less and less appealing.

## Viewing Contact Details

Next let's make it possible for a JSON API client to download the details for a single client. We will naturally use an HTTP **GET** for this functionality and we will follow the convention we established for our regular web application, and put the path at `/api/v1/contacts/<contact id>`, so, for example, if you want to see the details of the contact with the id **42**, you would issue an HTTP **GET** to `/api/v1/contacts/42`.

This code is quite simple:

*Getting the Details of a Contact in JSON*

```
@app.route("/api/v1/contacts/<contact_id>", methods=["GET"]) ①
def json_contacts_view(contact_id=0):
    contact = Contact.find(contact_id) ②
    return contact.__dict__ ③
```

- ① Add a new **GET** route at the path we want to use for viewing contact details
- ② Look the contact up via the id passed in through the path
- ③ Convert the contact to a dictionary, so it can be rendered as JSON response

Nothing too complicated: we look the contact up by ID, provided in the path to the controller, and look that contact up. We then render it as JSON. You have to appreciate the simplicity of this code!

Next, let's add updating and deleting a contact as well.

## Updating & Deleting Contacts

As with the create contact API end point, because there is no HTML UI to produce for them, we can reuse the `/api/v1/contacts/<contact id>` path. We will use the **PUT** HTTP action for updating a contact and the **DELETE** action for deleting one.

Our update code is going to look nearly identical to the create handler, except that, rather than



creating a new contact, we will look up the contact by ID and update its fields. In this sense we are just combining the code of the create handler and the detail view handler.

#### *Updating A Contact With Our JSON API*

```
@app.route("/api/v1/contacts/<contact_id>", methods=["PUT"]) ❶
def json_contacts_edit(contact_id):
    c = Contact.find(contact_id) ❷
    c.update(request.form['first_name'], request.form['last_name'],
request.form['phone'], request.form['email']) ❸
    if c.save(): ❹
        return c.__dict__
    else:
        return {"errors": c.errors}, 400
```

- ❶ We handle **PUT** requests to the URL for a given contact
- ❷ Look the contact up via the id passed in through the path
- ❸ We update the contact's data from the values included in the request
- ❹ From here on the logic is identical to the `json_contacts_create()` handler

Once again, very regular and, thanks to the built-in functionality in Flask, simple to implement.

Let's look at deleting a contact now. This turns out to be even simpler: as with the update handler we are going to look up the contact by id, and then, well, delete it. At that point we can return a simple JSON object indicating success.

#### *Deleting A Contact With Our JSON API*

```
@app.route("/api/v1/contacts/<contact_id>", methods=["DELETE"]) ❶
def json_contacts_delete(contact_id=0):
    contact = Contact.find(contact_id)
    contact.delete() ❷
    return jsonify({"success": True}) ❸
```

- ❶ We handle **DELETE** requests to the URL for a given contact
- ❷ Look the contact up and invoke the `delete()` method on it
- ❸ Return a simple JSON object indicating that the contact was successfully deleted

And, with that, we have our simple little JSON Data API to live alongside our regular web application, nicely separated out from the main web application, so it can evolve separately as needed.

## **Additional Data API Considerations**

Now, we obviously have a lot more to do if we want to make this a production ready JSON API:

- We don't have any rate limiting, which is important for any publicly facing Data API to avoid abusive clients.

- Even more crucially, there is currently no authentication mechanism. (We don't have one for our web application either!)
- We currently don't support paging of our contact data.
- Lots of small issues that we aren't addressing, such as rendering a proper **404 (Not Found)** response if someone makes a request with a contact id that doesn't exist.

A full discussion around all of these topics is beyond the scope of this book, but I'd like to focus in on one in particular, authentication, in order to show the difference between our hypermedia and JSON API. In order to secure our application we need to add *authentication*, some mechanism for determining who a request is coming from, and also *authorization*, determining if they have the right to perform the request.

We will set authorization aside for now and consider only authentication.

## Authentication in Web Applications

In the HTML web application world, authentication has traditionally been done via a login page that asks a user for their username (often their email) and a password. This password is then checked against a database of (hashed) passwords to establish that the user is who they say they are. If the password is correct, then a *session cookie* is established, indicating who the user is. This cookie is then sent with every request that the user makes to the web application, allowing the application to know which user is making a given request.

### HTTP Cookies

HTTP Cookies are kind of a strange feature of HTTP. In some ways they violate the goal of remaining stateless, a major component of the REST-ful architecture: a server will often use a session cookie as an index into state kept on the server "on the side", such as a cache of the last action performed by the user.

Nonetheless, cookies have proven extremely useful and so people tend not to complain about this aspect of them too much (I'm not sure what our other options would be here!) An interesting example of pragmatism gone (relatively) right in web development.

In comparison with the typical web application approach to authentication, a JSON API will typically use some sort of *token based* authentication: an authentication token will be established via a mechanism like OAuth, and that authentication token will then be passed, often as an HTTP Header, with every request that a client makes.

At a high level this is similar to what happens in normal web application authentication: a token is established somehow and then the token is part of every request. However, in practice, the mechanics tend to be wildly different:

- Cookies are part of the HTTP specification and can be easily *set* by an HTTP Server
- JSON Authentication tokens, in contrast, often require elaborate exchange mechanics like OAuth to be established

These differing mechanics for establishing authentication are yet another good reason for splitting our JSON and hypermedia APIs up.

## The "Shape" of Our Two APIs

When we were building out our API, we noted that in many cases the JSON API didn't require as many end points as our hypermedia API did: we didn't need a `/contacts/new` handler, for example, to provide a hypermedia representation for creating contacts.

Another aspect of our hypermedia API to consider was the performance improvement we made: we pulled the total contact count out to a separate end point and implemented the "Lazy Load" pattern, to improve the perceived performance of our application.

Now, if we had both our hypermedia and JSON API sharing the same paths, would we want to publish this API as a JSON end point as well?

Maybe, but maybe not. This was a pretty specific need for our web application, and, absent a request from a user of our JSON API, it doesn't make sense to include it for JSON consumers.

And what if, by some miracle, the performance issues with `Contact.count()` that we were addressing with the Lazy Load pattern goes away? Well, in our Hypermedia Drive Application we can simply revert to the old code and include the count directly in the request to `/contacts`. We can remove the `contacts/count` end point and all the logic associated with it. By the miracle of hypermedia, the system will continue to work just fine!

But what if we had tied our JSON API and hypermedia API together, and published `/contacts/count` as a supported end point for our JSON API? In that case we couldn't simply remove the end point: a (non-hypermedia) client might be relying on it!

Once again you can see the flexibility of the hypermedia approach and why separating your JSON API out from your hypermedia API lets you take maximum advantage of that flexibility.

## The Model View Controller (MVC) Paradigm

One thing you may have noticed about the handlers for our JSON API is that they are relatively simple and regular. Most of the hard work of updating data and so forth is done within the contact model itself: the handlers act as simple connectors that provide a go-between the HTTP requests and the model.

This is the ideal controller of the Model-View-Controller (MVC) paradigm that was so popular in the early web: a controller should be "thin", with the model containing the majority of the logic in the system.

## The Model View Controller Pattern

The Model View Controller design pattern is a classic architectural pattern in software development, and was a major influence in early web development. It is no longer emphasized as heavily, as web development has split into front-end and back-end camps, but most web developers are still familiar with the idea.

Traditionally, the MVC pattern mapped into web development like so:

- **Model** - A collection of "domain" classes that implement all the logic and rules for the particular domain your application is designed for. The model typically provides "resources" that are then presented to clients as HTML "representations".
- **View** - Typically views would be some sort of client-side templating system, and would render the aforementioned HTML representation for a given Model instance.
- **Controller** - The controllers job is to take HTTP requests, convert them into sensible requests to the Model and forward those requests on to the appropriate Model objects. It then passes the HTML representation back to the client as an HTTP response.

Thin controllers make it easy to split your JSON and hypermedia APIs out, because all the important logic lives in the domain model that is shared by both. This allows you to evolve both separately, while still keeping logic in sync with one another. With properly built "thin" controllers and "fat" models, keeping two separate APIs both in sync and yet still evolving separately is not as difficult or as crazy as it might sound at first.

### 11.3. Summary

- In this chapter we saw that a Hypermedia Driven Application can have a JSON Data API as well
- Hypermedia APIs and JSON Data APIs have different needs and shapes
- By properly factoring your back end code, much of the logic can be shared between the two APIs
- By splitting your APIs into both a Hypermedia API and a JSON Data API, you can evolve both without interfering with one another, allowing you to, for example, change your Hypermedia API dramatically without breaking your JSON API clients

# Bringing Hypermedia To Mobile

# Chapter 12. Hyperview: A Mobile Hypermedia

This chapter covers

- Shortcomings with the current state of mobile app development
- How a hypermedia architecture can address these problems
- Hyperview as a mobile app framework that uses the hypermedia architecture
- An overview of HXML, the hypermedia format used by Hyperview

You may be forgiven for thinking the hypermedia architecture is synonymous with the Web, web browsers, and HTML. No doubt, the Web is the largest hypermedia system, and web browsers are the most popular hypermedia client. The dominance of the Web in discussions about hypermedia make it easy to forget that hypermedia is a general concept, and can be applied to all types of platforms and applications. In this chapter, we will see the hypermedia architecture applied to a non-web platform: native mobile applications. Mobile as a platform has different constraints than the Web. It requires different tradeoffs and design decisions. Nonetheless, the concepts of hypermedia, HATEOAS, and REST can be directly applied to build delightful mobile applications!

## 12.1. The state of mobile app development

Before we can discuss how to apply hypermedia to mobile platforms, we need to understand how native mobile apps are commonly built. I'm using the word "native" to refer to code written against an SDK provided by the phone's operating system (typically Android or iOS). This code is packaged into an executable binary, and uploaded & approved through app stores controlled by Google and Apple. When users install or update an app, they're downloading this executable and running the code directly on their device's OS. In this way, mobile apps have a lot in common with old-school desktop apps for Mac, Windows, or Linux. There is one important difference between PC desktop apps of yesteryear and today's mobile apps. These days, almost all mobile apps are "networked". By networked, I mean the app needs to read and write data over the Internet to deliver its core functionality. In other words, a networked mobile app needs to implement the client-server architecture.

When implementing the client-server architecture, the developer needs to make a decision: Should the app be designed as a thin client or thick client? The current mobile ecosystems strongly push developers towards a thick-client approach. Why? Remember, Android and iOS require that a native mobile app be packaged and distributed as an executable binary. There's no way around it. Since the developer needs to write code to package into an executable, it seems logical to implement some of the app's logic in that code. The code may as well initiate HTTP calls to the server to retrieve data, and then render that data using the platform's UI libraries. Thus, developers are naturally led into a thick-client pattern that looks something like this:

- The client contains code to make API requests to the server, and code to translate those responses to UI updates
- The server implements an HTTP API that speaks JSON, and knows little about the state of the

Just like with SPAs on the web, this architecture has a big downside: the app's logic gets spread across the client and server. Sometimes, this means that logic gets duplicated (like to validate form data). Other times, the client and server each implement disjoint parts of the app's overall logic. To understand what the app does, a developer needs to trace interactions between two very different codebases.

There's another downside that affects mobile apps more than SPAs: API churn. Remember, the app stores control how your app gets distributed and updated. Users can even control if and when they get updated versions of your app. As a mobile developer, you can't assume that every user will be on the latest version of your app. Your frontend code gets fragmented across many versions, and now your backend needs to support all of them.

## 12.2. Hypermedia for Mobile Apps

We've seen that the hypermedia architecture can address the shortcomings of SPAs on the web. But can hypermedia work for mobile apps as well? The answer is yes!

Just like on the web, we can use Hypermedia formats on mobile and let it serve as the engine of application state. All of the logic is controlled from the backend, rather than being spread between two codebases. Hypermedia architecture also solves the annoying problem of API churn on mobile apps. Since the backend serves a Hypermedia response containing both data and actions, there's no way for the data and UI to get out of sync. No more worries about backwards compatibility or maintaining multiple API versions.

So how can you use Hypermedia for your mobile app? There are two approaches employing hypermedia to build & ship native mobile apps today:

- Web views, which wraps the trusty web platform in a mobile app shell
- Hyperview, a new hypermedia format I designed specifically for mobile apps

### Web views

The simplest way to use hypermedia architecture on mobile is by leveraging web technologies. Both Android and iOS SDKs provide "web views": chromeless web browsers that can be embedded in native apps. Tools like Apache Cordova make it easy to take the URL of a website, and spit out native iOS and Android apps based on web views. If you already have a responsive web app, you can get a "native" Hypermedia apps for free. Sounds too good to be true, right?

Of course, there is a fundamental limitation with this approach. The web and mobile are different platforms, with different capabilities and UX conventions. HTML doesn't natively support common UI patterns of mobile apps. One of the biggest differences is around how each platform handles navigation. On the web, navigation is page-based, with one page replacing another and the browser providing back/forward buttons to navigate the page history. On mobile, navigation is more complex, and tuned for the physicality of gesture-based interactions.

- To drill down, screens slide on top of each other, forming stacks of screens.

- A nav bar at the bottom of the app allows switching between various stacks of screens.
- Modals slide up from the bottom of the app, covering the other stacks and the nav bar.
- Unlike with web pages, all of these screens are still present in memory, rendered and updating based on app state.

The navigation architecture is a major difference between how mobile and web apps function. But it's not the only one. Many other UX patterns are present in mobile apps, but are not natively supported on the web:

- pull-to-refresh to refresh content in a screen
- horizontal swipe on UI elements to reveal actions
- sectioned lists with sticky headers

While these interactions are not natively supported by web browsers, they can be simulated with JS libraries. Of course, these libraries will never have the same feel and performance as native gestures. And using these libraries usually requires embracing a JS-heavy SPA architecture. This puts us back at square 1! To avoid using the typical thick-client architecture of native mobile apps, we turned to a Web view. The web view allows us to use good-old hypermedia-based HTML. But to get the desired look & feel of a mobile app, we end up building a SPA in JS, losing the benefits of Hypermedia in the process.

To build a hypermedia-based mobile app that feels and acts native, HTML isn't going to cut it. We need a format designed to represent the interactions and patterns of native mobile apps. That's exactly what Hyperview does.

## Hyperview

Hyperview is an open-source framework that provides:

- A pre-defined hypermedia format for defining mobile apps called HXML
- A hypermedia client for HXML that can be embedded in an app binary on iOS and Android
- Extension points in HXML and the client to customize the framework for a given app

### The Format

HXML was designed to feel familiar to web developers, used to working with HTML. Thus the choice of XML for the base format. In addition to familiar ergonomics, XML is compatible with server-side rendering libraries. For example, Jinja2 is perfectly suited as a templating library to render HXML. The familiarity of XML and the ease of integration on the backend make it simple to adopt in both new and existing codebases. Take a look at a "Hello World" app written in HXML. The syntax should be familiar to anyone who's worked with HTML:



```
<doc xmlns="https://hyperview.org/hyperview">
  <screen>
    <styles />
    <body>
      <header>
        <text>My first app</text>
      </header>
      <view>
        <text>Hello World!</text>
      </view>
    </body>
  </screen>
</doc>
```

But HXML is not just a straight port of HTML with differently named tags. In previous chapters, we've seen how htmx enhances HTML with a handful of new attributes. These additions maintain the declarative nature of HTML, while giving developers the power to create rich web apps. In HXML, the concepts of htmx (and IntercoolerJS before it) are built into the spec. Specifically, HXML is not limited to "click to navigate" and "press to submit" interactions like basic HTML. It supports a range of triggers and actions for modifying the content on a screen. These interactions are bundled together in a powerful concept of "behaviors". Developers can even define new behavior actions to add new capabilities to their app, without the need for scripting. We will learn more about behaviors later in this chapter.

## The client

Web developers are lucky. They can assume their users have access to a web browser capable of rendering any web app. In Hypermedia terms, the Hypermedia (HTML) client is already built and distributed to users. Half the work is done! The developer has to only build the backend to serve Hypermedia responses.

[figure 6 1] | *figure\_6\_1.png*

*Figure 11. One HTML server, multiple HTML clients*

This is possible because the web is an open ecosystem built on standards. Any developer can build and host a web app, and any user can access it directly.

As we know, that's not the case with mobile platforms. There is no open standard for building and distributing native mobile apps. And there's definitely no widely distributed "HXML browser". So how can a developer deliver a Hypermedia mobile app using HXML? Well, unlike on the web, the mobile developer must provide both the backend to serve HXML, and a mobile client app to render those HXML responses.

[figure 6 1] | *figure\_6\_1.png*

*Figure 12. One HXML server, one HXML client*

It would be a lot to ask from developers to write their own HXML client. That's why Hyperview

provides an open-source client library, written in React Native. This library can be used to bootstrap a new mobile app, or it can be embedded in an existing app. In either case, developers get a full "HXML browser" without needing to write it from scratch.

### *The Benefits of Using Your Own Client*

At first, it might seem like the Hyperview approach requires extra work to write and maintain the mobile app client.

But there is a benefit to controlling both parts of the client-server architecture.

Did you ever wish you could fix a web browser bug?

Or maybe add a new HTML element or features to the browser itself?

The open nature of the Web means that progress happens slowly.

New features go through a lengthy standardization process.

Browser vendors may prioritize bugs and features that don't match your individual priorities.

As a Web developer, you may need to wait years until browsers support the feature you need.

Or, you can try to work around it with some kludgy JS.

Well, with Hyperview, there is no standards body or lengthy process for new features.

As a Hyperview developer, you control your backend and mobile app client.

Do you want to add a new element to HXML?

Go right ahead!

In fact, the Hyperview client library was built with extensibility in mind.

There are extension points for custom UI elements and custom behavior actions.

By extending the format and client itself, there's no need for Hyperview to include a scripting layer in HTMX.

Features that require client-side logic get "built-in" to the client browser.

HTMX responses remain pure, with UI and interactions represented in declarative XML.

## **Which Hypermedia architecture should I use?**

We've discussed two approaches for creating mobile apps using Hypermedia architecture:

- create a backend that returns HTML, and serve it in a mobile app through a web view
- create a backend that returns HXML, and serve it in a mobile app with the Hyperview client

I purposefully described the two approaches in a way to highlight their similarities. After all, they are both using the Hypermedia architecture, just with different formats and clients. Both approaches solve the fundamental issues with traditional, SPA-like mobile app development:

- The backend controls the full state of the app.
- Our app's logic is all in one place.
- The app always runs the latest version, there's no API churn to worry about

So which approach should you use for a Hypermedia-driven mobile app? Based on my experience building both types of apps, I strongly believe the Hyperview results in a better user experience. The web-view will always feel out-of-place on iOS and Android; there's just no good way to replicate

the patterns of navigation and interaction that mobile users expect. Hyperview was created specifically to address the limitations of thick-client and web view approaches. After the initial investment to learn Hyperview, you'll get all of the benefits of the Hypermedia architecture, without the downsides of a degraded user experience.

Of course, if you already have a simple, mobile-friendly web app, then using a web-view approach is sensible. You will certainly save time from not having to serve your app as HXML in addition to HTML. But as I will show at the end of this chapter, it doesn't take a lot of work to convert an existing Hypermedia-driven web app into a Hyperview mobile app. But before we get there, we need to introduce the concepts of elements and behaviors in Hyperview. Then, we'll re-build our contacts app in Hyperview.

## 12.3. Introduction to HXML

### Hello World!

HXML was designed to feel natural to web developers coming from HTML. Let's take a closer look at the "Hello World" app defined in HXML:

*Hello World, revisited*

```
<doc xmlns="https://hyperview.org/hyperview"> ①
  <screen> ②
    <styles />
    <body> ③
      <header> ④
        <text>My first app</text>
      </header>
      <view> ⑤
        <text>Hello World!</text> ⑥
      </view>
    </body>
  </screen>
</doc>
```

- ① The root element of the HXML app
- ② The element representing a screen of the app
- ③ The element representing the UI of the screen
- ④ The element representing the top header of the screen
- ⑤ A wrapper element around the content shown on the screen
- ⑥ The text content shown on the screen

Nothing too strange here, right? Just like HTML, the syntax defines a tree of elements using start tags (`<screen>`) and end tags (`</screen>`). Elements can contain other elements (`<view>`) or text (`Hello World!`). Elements can also be empty, represented with an empty tag (`<styles />`). However, you'll notice that the names of the HXML element are different from those in HTML. Let's take a closer look at each of those elements to understand what they do.

`<doc>` is the root of the HXML app. Think of it as equivalent to the `<html>` element in HTML. Note that the `<doc>` element contains an attribute `xmlns="https://hyperview.org/hyperview"`. This defines the default namespace for the doc. Namespaces are a feature of XML that allow one doc to contain elements defined by different developers. To prevent conflicts when two developers use the same name for their element, each developer defines a unique namespace. We will talk more about namespaces when we discuss custom elements & behaviors later in this chapter. For now, it's enough to know that elements in an HXML doc without an explicit namespace are considered to be part of the <https://hyperview.org/hyperview> namespace.

`<screen>` represents the UI that gets rendered on a single screen of a mobile app. It's possible for one `<doc>` to contain multiple `<screen>` elements, but we won't get into that now. Typically, a `<screen>` element will contain elements that define the content and styling of the screen.

`<styles>` defines the styles of the UI on the screen. We won't get too much into styling in Hyperview in this chapter. Suffice it to say, unlike HTML, Hyperview does not use a separate language (CSS) to define styles. Instead, styling rules such as colors, spacing, layout, and fonts are defined in HXML. These rules are then explicitly referenced by UI elements, much like using classes in CSS.

`<body>` defines the actual UI of the screen. The body includes all text, images, buttons, forms, etc that will be shown to the user. This is equivalent to the `<body>` element in HTML.

`<header>` defines the header of the screen. Typically in mobile apps, the header includes some navigation (like a back button), and the title of the screen. It's useful to define the header separately from the rest of the body. Some mobile OSes will use a different transition for the header than the rest of the screen content.

`<view>` is the basic building block for layouts and structure within the screen's body. Think of it like a `<div>` in HTML. Note that unlike in HTML, a `<div>` cannot directly contain text.

`<text>` elements are the only way to render text in the UI. In this example, "Hello World" is contained within a `<text>` element.

That's all there is to define a basic "Hello World" app in HXML. Of course, this isn't very exciting. Let's cover some other built-in display elements.

## UI Elements

### Lists

A very common pattern in mobile apps is to scroll through a list of items. The physical properties of a phone screen (long & vertical) and the intuitive gesture of swiping a thumb up & down makes this a good choice for many screens.

HXML has dedicated elements for representing lists and items.

```
<list> ❶  
  <item key="item1"> ❷  
    <text>My first item</text> ❸  
  </item>  
  <item key="item2">  
    <text>My second item</text>  
  </item>  
</list>
```

- ❶ Element representing a list
- ❷ Element representing an item in the list, with a unique key
- ❸ The content of the item in the list.

Lists are represented with two new elements. The `<list>` wraps all of items in the list. It can be styled like a generic `<view>` (width, height, etc). A `<list>` element only contains `<item>` elements. Of course, these represent each unique item in the list. Note that `<item>` is required to have a `key` attribute, which is unique among all items in the list.

You might be asking, "Why do we need a custom syntax for lists of items? Can't we just use a bunch of `<view>` elements?". Yes, for lists with a small number of items, using nested `<views>` will work quite well. However, often the number of items in a list can be long enough to require optimizations to support smooth scrolling interactions. Consider browsing a feed of posts in a social media app. As you keep scrolling through the feed, it's not unusual for the app to show hundreds if not thousands of posts. At any time, you can flick your finger to scroll to almost any part of the feed. Mobile devices tend to be memory-constrained. Keeping the fully-rendered list of items in memory could consume more resources than available. That's why both iOS and Android provide APIs for optimized list UIs. These APIs know which part of the list is currently on-screen. To save memory, they clear out the non-visible list items, and recycle the item UI objects to conserve memory. By using explicit `<list>` and `<item>` elements in HXML, the Hyperview client knows to use these optimized list APIs to make your app more performant.

It's also worth mentioning that HXML supports section lists. Section lists are useful for building list-based UIs, where the items in the list can be grouped for the user's convenience. For example, a UI showing a restaurant menu could group the offerings by dish type:

```
<section-list> ①
  <section> ②
    <section-title> ③
      <text>Appetizers</text>
    </section-title>
    <item key="1"> ④
      <text>French Fries</text>
    </item>
    <item key="2">
      <text>Onion Rings</text>
    </item>
  </section>

  <section> ⑤
    <section-title>
      <text>Entrees</text>
    </section-title>
    <item key="3">
      <text>Burger</text>
    </item>
  </section>
</section-list>
```

- ① Element representing a list with sections
- ② The first section of appetizer offerings
- ③ Element for the title of the section, rendering the text "Appetizers"
- ④ An item representing an appetizer
- ⑤ A section for entree offerings

You'll notice a couple of differences between `<list>` and `<section-list>`. The section list element only contains `<section>` elements, representing a group of items. A section can contain a `<section-title>` element. This is used to render some UI that acts as the header of the section. This header is "sticky", meaning it stays on screen while scrolling through items that belong to the corresponding section. Finally, `<item>` elements act the same as in the regular list, but can only appear within a `<section>`.

## Images

Showing images in Hyperview is pretty similar to HTML, but there are a few differences.

### Image element

```
<image source="/profiles/1.jpg" style="avatar" />
```

The `source` attribute specifies how to load the image. Like in HTML, the source can be an absolute or relative URL. Additionally, the source can be an encoded data URI, for example

`.` However, the source can also be a "local" URL, referring to an image that is bundled as an asset in the mobile app. The local URL is prefixed with `./`:

*Image element, pointing to local source*

```
<image source="./logo.png" style="logo" />
```

Using Local URLs is an optimization. Since the images are on the mobile device, they don't require a network request and will appear quickly. However, bundling the image with the mobile app binary increases the binary size. Using local images is a good tradeoff for images that are frequently accessed but rarely change. Good examples include the app logo, or common button icons.

The other thing to note is the presence of the `style` attribute on the `<image>` element. In HXML, images are required to have a style that has rules for the image's `width` and `height`. This is different from HTML, where `<img>` elements do not need to explicitly set a width and height. Web browsers will re-flow the content of a web page once the image is fetched and the dimensions are known. While re-flowing content is a reasonable behavior for web-based documents, users do not expect mobile apps to re-flow as content loads. To maintain a static layout, HXML requires the dimensions to be known before the image loads.

## Inputs

There's a lot to cover about inputs in Hyperview. Since this is meant to be an introduction and not an exhaustive resource, I'll highlight just a few types of inputs. Let's start with an example of the simplest type of input, a text field.

*Text field element*

```
<text-field
  name="first_name" ①
  style="input" ②
  value="Adam" ③
  placeholder="First name" ④
/>
```

- ① The name used when serializing data from this input
- ② The style class applied to the UI element
- ③ The currently value set in the field
- ④ A placeholder to display when the value is empty

This element should feel familiar to anyone who's created a text field in HTML. One difference is that most inputs in HTML use the `<input>` element with a `type` attribute, eg `<input type="text">`. In Hyperview, each input has a unique name, in this case `<text-field>`. By using different names, we can use more expressive XML to represent the input.

For example, let's consider a case where we want to render a UI that lets the user select one among several options. In HTML, we would use a radio button input, something like `<input type="radio" name="choice" value="option1" />`. Each choice is represented as a unique input element. This never

struck me as ideal. Most of the time, radio buttons are grouped together to affect the same name. The HTML approach leads to a lot of boilerplate (duplication of `type="radio"` and `name="choice"` for each choice). Also, unlike radio buttons on desktop, mobile OSes don't provide a strong standard UI for selecting one option. Most mobile apps use richer, custom UIs for these interactions. So in HXML, we implement this UI using an element called `<select-single>`:

#### Select-single element

```
<select-single name="choice"> ①
  <option value="option1"> ②
    <text>Option 1</text> ③
  </option>
  <option value="option2">
    <text>Option 2</text>
  </option>
</select-single>
```

- ① Element representing an input where a single choice is selected. The name of the selection is defined once here.
- ② Element representing one of the choices. The choice value is defined here.
- ③ The UI of the selection. In this example, we use text, but we can use any UI elements.

The `<select-single>` element is the parent of the input for selecting one choice out of many. This element contains the `name` attribute used when serializing the selected choice. `<option>` elements within `<select-single>` represent the available choices. Note that each `<option>` element has a `value` attribute. When pressed, this will be the selected value of the input. The `<option>` element can contain any other UI elements within it. This means that we're not hampered by rendering the input as a list of radio buttons with labels. We can render the options as radios, tags, images, or anything else that would be intuitive for our interface. HXML styling supports modifiers for pressed and selected states, letting us customize the UI to highlight the selected option.

Like I mentioned, describing all features of inputs in HXML would take an entire chapter. Instead, I'll summarize a few other input elements and their features.

- `<select-multiple>` works like `<select-single>`, but it supports toggling multiple options on & off. This replaces checkbox inputs in HTML.
- The `<switch>` element renders a on/off switch that is common in mobile UIs
- The `<date-field>` element supports entering in specific dates, and comes with a wide range of customizations for formatting, settings ranges, etc.

Two more things to mention about inputs. First is the `<form>` element. The `<form>` element is used to group together inputs for serialization. When a user takes an action that triggers a backend request, the Hyperview client will serialize all inputs in the surrounding `<form>` and include them in the request. This is true for both `GET` and `POST` requests. We will cover this in more detail when talking about behaviors later in this chapter. Also later in this chapter, I'll talk about support for custom elements in HXML. With custom elements, you can also create your own input elements. Custom input elements allow you to build incredible powerful interactions with simple XML syntax that integrates well with the rest of HXML.



## Styling

So far, we haven't mentioned how to apply styling to all of the HXML elements. We've seen from the Hello World app that each `<screen>` can contain a `<styles>` element. Let's re-visit the Hello World app and fill out the `<styles>` element.

### UI styling example

```
<doc xmlns="https://hyperview.org/hyperview">
  <screen>
    <styles> ①
      <style class="body" flex="1" flexDirection="column" /> ②
      <style class="header" borderBottomWidth="1" borderBottomColor="#ccc" />
      <style class="main" margin="24" />
      <style class="h1" fontSize="32" />
      <style class="info" color="blue" />
    </styles>

    <body style="body"> ③
      <header style="header">
        <text style="info">My first app</text>
      </header>
      <view style="main">
        <text style="h1 info">Hello World!</text> ④
      </view>
    </body>
  </screen>
</doc>
```

- ① Element encapsulating all of the styling for the screen
- ② Example of a definition of a style class for "body"
- ③ Applying the "body" style class to a UI element
- ④ Example of applying multiple style classes (h1 and info) to an element

You'll note that in HXML, styling is part of the XML format, rather than using a separate language like CSS. However, we can draw some parallels between CSS rules and the `<style>` element. A CSS rule consists of a selector and declarations. In the current version of HXML, the only available selector is a class name, indicated by the `class` attribute. The rest of the attributes on the `<style>` element are declarations, consisting of properties and property values.

UI elements within the `<screen>` can reference the `<style>` rules by adding the class names to their `<style>` property. Note the `<text>` element around "Hello World!" references two style classes: `h1` and `info`. The styles from the corresponding classes are merged together in the order they appear on the element. It's worth noting that styling properties are similar to those in CSS (color, margins/padding, borders, etc). Currently, the only available layout engine is based on flexbox.

Styles rules can get quite verbose. For the sake of brevity, I won't include the `<styles>` element in the rest of the examples in this chapter unless necessary.

## Custom elements

The core UI elements that ship with Hyperview are quite basic. Most mobile apps require richer elements to deliver a great user experience. Luckily, HXML can easily accomodate custom elements in its syntax. This is because HXML is really just XML, aka "Extensible Markup Language". Extensibility is already built into the format! Developers are free to define new elements and attributes to represent custom elements.

Let's see this in action with a concrete example. Assume that we want to add a map element to our Hello World app. We want the map to display a defined area, and one or more markers at specific coordinates in that area. Let's translate these requirements into XML:

- An `<area>` element will represent the area displayed by the map. To specify the area, the element will include attributes for `latitude` and `longitude` for the center of the area, and a `latitude-delta` and `longitude-delta` indicating the +/- display area around the center.
- A `<marker>` element will represent a marker in the area. The coordinates of the marker will be defined by `latitude` and `longitude` attributes on the marker.

Using these custom XML elements, an instance of the map in our app might look like this:

### *Custom elements in HXML*

```
<doc xmlns="https://hyperview.org/hyperview">
  <screen>
    <body>
      <view>
        <text>Hello World!</text>
        <area latitude="37.8270" longitude="122.4230" latitude-delta="0.1"
longitude-delta="0.1"> ❶
          <marker latitude="37.8118" longitude="-122.4177" /> ❷
        </area>
      </view>
    </body>
  </screen>
</doc>
```

❶ Custom element representing the area rendered by the map

❷ Custom element representing a marker rendered at specific coordinates on the map

The syntax feels right at home among the core HXML elements. However, there's a potential problem. "area" and "marker" are pretty generic names. I could see `<area>` and `<marker>` elements being used by a customization to render charts & graphs. If our app renders both maps and charts, the HXML markup would be ambiguous. What should the client render when it sees `<area>` or `<marker>`?

This is where XML namespaces come in. XML namespaces eliminate ambiguity and collisions between elements and attributes used to represent different things. Remember that the `<doc>` element declares that <https://hyperview.org/hyperview> is the default namespace for the entire document. Since no other elements define namespaces, every element in the example above is part

of the <https://hyperview.org/hyperview> namespace.

Let's define a new namespace for our map elements. Since this namespace will not be the default for the document, we also need to assign the namespace to a prefix we will add to our elements:

```
<doc xmlns="https://hyperview.org/hyperview" xmlns:map="https://mycompany.com/hyperview-map">
```

This new attribute declares that the `map:` prefix is associated with the namespace `"https://mycompany.com/hyperview-map"`. This namespace could be anything, but remember the goal is to use something unique that won't have collisions. Using your company/app domain is a good way to guarantee uniqueness. Now that we have a namespace and prefix, we need to use it for our elements:

### *Namespacing the custom elements*

```
<doc xmlns="https://hyperview.org/hyperview"
  xmlns:map="https://mycompany.com/hyperview-map"> ❶
  <screen>
    <body>
      <view>
        <text>Hello World!</text>
        <map:area latitude="37.8270" longitude="122.4230" latitude-delta="0.1"
  longitude=delta="0.1"> ❷
          <map:marker latitude="37.8118" longitude="-122.4177" /> ❸
        </map:area> ❹
      </view>
    </body>
  </screen>
</doc>
```

- ❶ Definition of namespace aliased to "map"
- ❷ Adding the namespace to the "area" start tag
- ❸ Adding the namespace to the "marker" self-closing tag
- ❹ Adding the namespace to the "area" end tag

That's it! If we introduced a custom charting library with "area" and "marker" elements, we would create a unique namespace for those elements as well. Within the HXML doc, we could easily disambiguate `<map:area>` from `<chart:area>`.

At this point you might be wondering, "how does the Hyperview client know to render a map when my doc includes `<map:area>` "? It's true, so far we only defined the custom element format, but we haven't implemented the element as a feature in our app. We will get into the details of implementing custom elements in the next chapter.

## Behaviors

As discussed in earlier chapters, HTML supports two basic types of interactions:

- Clicking a hyperlink: the client will make a GET request and render the response as a new web

page.

- Submitting a form: the client will make a (typically) POST request with the serialized content of the form, and render the response as a new web page.

Clicking hyperlinks and submitting forms is enough to build simple web applications. But relying on just these two interactions limits our ability to build richer UIs. What if we want something to happen when the user mouses over a certain element, or perhaps when they scroll some content into the viewport? We can't do that with basic HTML. Additionally, both clicks and form submits result in loading a full new web page. What if we only want to update a small part of the current page? This is a very common scenario in rich web applications, where users expect to fetch and update content without navigating to a new page.

So with basic HTML, interactions (clicks and submits) are limited and tightly coupled to a single action (loading a new page). Of course, using JavaScript, we can extend HTML and add some new syntax to support our desired interactions. Htmx (and Intercooler before it) do exactly that with a new set of attributes:

- Interactions can be added to any element, not just links and forms.
- The interaction can be triggered via a click, submit, mouseover, or any other JavaScript event.
- The actions resulting from the trigger can modify the current page, not just request a new page.

By decoupling elements, triggers, and actions, htmx allows us to build rich Hypermedia-driven applications in a way that feels very compatible with HTML syntax and server-side web development.

HXML takes the idea of defining interactions via triggers & actions and builds them into the spec. We call these interactions "behaviors". We use a special `<behavior>` element to define them. Here's an example of a simple behavior that pushes a new mobile screen onto the navigation stack:

#### *Basic behavior*

```
<text>
  <behavior ①
    trigger="press" ②
    action="push" ③
    href="/next-screen" ④
  />
  Press me!
</text>
```

- ① The element encapsulating an interaction on the parent `<text>` element.
- ② The trigger that will execute the interaction, in this case pressing the `<text>` element.
- ③ The action that will execute when triggered, in this case pushing a new screen onto the current stack.
- ④ The href to load on the new screen.

Let's break down what's happening in this example. First, we have a `<text>` element with the content "Press me!". We've shown `<text>` elements before in examples of HXML, so this is nothing

new. But now, the `<text>` element contains a new child element, `<behavior>`. This `<behavior>` element defines an interaction on the parent `<text>` element. It contains two attributes that are required for any behavior:

- **trigger**: defines the user action that triggers the behavior
- **action**: defines what happens when triggered

In this example, the **trigger** is set to **press**, meaning this interaction will happen when the user presses the `<text>` element. The **action** attribute is set to **push**. **push** is an action that will push a new screen onto the navigation stack. Finally, Hyperview needs to know what content to load on the newly pushed screen. This is where the **href** attribute comes in. Notice we don't need to define the full URL. Much like in HTML, the **href** can be an absolute or relative URL.

So that's a first example of behaviors in HXML. You may be thinking this syntax seems quite verbose. Indeed, pressing elements to navigate to a new screen is one of the most common interactions in a mobile app. It would be nice to have a simpler syntax for the common case. Luckily, **trigger** and **action** attributes have default values of **press** and **push**, respectively. Therefore, they can be omitted to clean up the syntax:

#### *Basic behavior with defaults*

```
<text>
  <behavior href="/next-screen" /> ①
  Press me!
</text>
```

① When pressed, this behavior will open a new screen with the given URL.

This markup for the `<behavior>` will produce the same interaction as the earlier example. With the default attributes, the `<behavior>` element looks similar to an anchor `<a>` in HTML. But the full syntax achieves our goals of decoupling elements, triggers, and actions:

- Behaviors can be added to any element, they are not limited to links and forms.
- Behaviors can specify an explicit **trigger**, not just clicks or form submits.
- Behaviors can specify an explicit **action**, not just a request for a new page.
- Extra attributes like **href** provide more context for the action.

Additionally, using a dedicated `<behavior>` element means a single element can define multiple behaviors. This let us execute several actions from the same trigger. Or, we can execute different actions for different triggers on the same element. We will show examples of the power of multiple behaviors at the end of this chapter. First we need to show the variety of supported actions and triggers.

## **Actions**

Behavior actions in Hyperview fall into 3 general categories:

- Navigation actions, which load new screens and move between them

- Update actions, which modify the HXML of the current screen
- System actions, which interact with with OS-level capabilities.
- Custom actions, which can execute any code you add to the client.

### Navigation Actions

We've already seen the simplest type of action, `push`. We classify `push` as a "navigation action", since it's related to navigating screens in the mobile app. Pushing a screen onto the navigation stack is just one of several navigation actions supported in Hyperview. Users also need to be able to go back to previous screens, open and close modals, switch between tabs, or jump to arbitrary screens. Each of these types of navigations is supported through a different value for the `action` attribute:

- `push`: Push a new screen into the current navigation stack. This looks like a screen sliding in from the right, on top of the current screen.
- `new`: Open a new navigation stack as a modal. This looks like a screen sliding in from the bottom, on top of the current screen.
- `back`: This is a complement to the `push` action. It pops the current screen off of the navigation stack (sliding it to the right).
- `close`: This is a complement to the `new` action. It closes the current navigation stack (sliding it down).
- `reload`: Similar to a browser's "refresh" button, this will re-request the content of the current screen.
- `navigate`: This action will attempt to find a screen with the given `href` already loaded in the app. If the screen exists, the app will jump to that screen. If it doesn't exist, it will act the same as `push`.

`push`, `new`, and `navigate` all load a new screen. Thus, they require an `href` attribute so that Hyperview knows what content to request for the new screen. `back`, `close` do not load new screens, and thus do not require the `href` attribute. `reload` is an interesting case. By default, it will use the URL of the screen when re-requesting the content for the screen. However, if you want to replace the screen with a different one, you can provide an `href` attribute with `reload` on the behavior element.

Let's look at an example "widgets" app that uses several navigation actions on one screen:

```
<screen>
  <body>
    <header>
      <text>
        <behavior action="back" /> ❶
        Back
      </text>

      <text>
        <behavior action="new" href="/widgets/new" /> ❷
        New Widget
      </text>
    </header>
    <text>
      <behavior action="reload" /> ❸
      Check for new widgets
    </text>
    <list>
      <item key="widget1">
        <behavior action="push" href="/widgets/1" /> ❹
      </item>
    </list>
  </body>
</screen>
```

- ❶ Takes the user to the previous screen
- ❷ Opens a new modal to add a widget
- ❸ Reloads the content of the screen, showing new widgets from the backend
- ❹ Pushes a new screen with details for a specific widget

Most screens in your app will need a way for the user to backtrack to the previous screen. This is usually done with a button in the header that uses either a "back" or "close" action, depending on how the screen was opened. In this example, we're assuming the widgets screen was pushed onto the navigation stack, so the "back" action is appropriate. The header contains a second button that allows the user to enter data for a new widget. Pressing this button will open a modal with a "New Widget" screen. Since this "New Widget" screen will open as a modal, it will need a corresponding "close" action to dismiss itself and show our "widgets" screen again. Finally, to see more details about a specific widget, each `<item>` element contains a behavior with a "push" action. This action will push a "Widget Detail" screen onto the current navigation stack. Like in the "Widgets" screen, "Widget Detail" will need a button in the header that uses the "back" action to let the user backtrack.

On the web, the browser handles basic navigation needs such as going back/forward, reloading the current page, or jumping to a bookmark. iOS and Android don't provide this sort of universal navigation for native mobile apps. It's on the app developers to handle this themselves. Navigation actions in HXML provide an easy but powerful way for developers to build an architecture that makes sense for their app.

## Update Actions

Behavior actions are not just limited to navigating between screens. They can also be used to change the content on the current screen. We call these "update actions". Much like navigation actions, update actions make a request to the backend. However, the response is not an entire HXML document, but a fragment of HXML. This fragment is added to the HXML of the current screen, resulting in an update to the UI. The `action` attribute of the `<behavior>` determines how the fragment gets incorporated into the HXML. We also need to introduce a new `target` attribute on `<behavior>` to define where the fragment gets incorporated in the existing doc. The `target` attribute is an ID reference to an existing element on the screen.

Hyperview supports the current update actions, representing different ways to incorporate the fragment into the screen:

- `replace`: replaces the entire target element with the fragment
- `replace-inner`: replaces the children of the target element with the fragment
- `append`: adds the fragment after the last child of the target element
- `prepend`: adds the fragment before the first child of the target element.

Let's look at some examples to make this more concrete. For these examples, let's assume our backend accepts `GET` requests to `/fragment`, and the response is a fragment of HXML that looks like `<text>My fragment</text>`.



```

<screen>
  <body>
    <text>
      <behavior action="replace" href="/fragment" target="area1" /> ①
      Replace
    </text>
    <view id="area1">
      <text>Existing content</text>
    </view>

    <text>
      <behavior action="replace-inner" href="/fragment" target="area2" /> ②
      Replace-inner
    </text>
    <view id="area2">
      <text>Existing content</text>
    </view>

    <text>
      <behavior action="append" href="/fragment" target="area3" /> ③
      Append
    </text>
    <view id="area3">
      <text>Existing content</text>
    </view>

    <text>
      <behavior action="prepend" href="/fragment" target="area4" /> ④
      Prepend
    </text>
    <view id="area4">
      <text>Existing content</text>
    </view>

  </body>
</screen>

```

- ① Replaces the area1 element with fetched fragment
- ② Replaces the child elements of area2 with fetched fragment
- ③ Appends the fetched fragment to area3
- ④ Prepends the fetched fragment to area4

In this example, we have a screen with four buttons corresponding to the four update actions: `replace`, `replace-inner`, `append`, `prepend`. Below each button, there's a corresponding `<view>` containing some text. Note that the `id` of each view matches the `target` on the behaviors of the corresponding button.

When the user presses the first button, the Hyperview makes a request for `/fragment`. Next, it looks for the target, ie the element with id "area1". Finally, it replaces the `<view id="area1">` element with the fetched fragment, `<text>My fragment</text>`. The existing view and text contained in that view will be replaced. To the user, it will look like "Existing content" was changed to "My fragment". In the HXML, the element `<view id="area1">` will also be gone.

The second button behaves in a similar way to the first one. However, the `replace-inner` action does not remove the target element from the screen, it only replaces the children. This means the resulting markup will look like `<view id="area2"><text>My fragment</text></view>`.

The third and fourth buttons do not remove any content from the screen. Instead, the fragment will be added either after (in the case of `append`) or before (`prepend`) the children of the target element.

For completeness, let's look at the state of the screen after a user presses all four buttons:

```
<screen>
  <body>
    <text>
      <behavior action="replace" href="/fragment" target="area1" />
      Replace
    </text>
    <text>My fragment</text> ①

    <text>
      <behavior action="replace-inner" href="/fragment" target="area2" />
      Replace-inner
    </text>
    <view id="area2">
      <text>My fragment</text> ②
    </view>

    <text>
      <behavior action="append" href="/fragment" target="area3" />
      Append
    </text>
    <view id="area3">
      <text>Existing content</text>
      <text>My fragment</text> ③
    </view>

    <text>
      <behavior action="prepend" href="/fragment" target="area4" />
      Prepend
    </text>
    <view id="area4">
      <text>My fragment</text> ④
      <text>Existing content</text>
    </view>

  </body>
</screen>
```

- ① Fragment completely replaced the target using **replace** action
- ② Fragment replaced the children of the target using **replace-inner** action
- ③ Fragment added as last child of the target using **append** action
- ④ fragment added as the first child of the target using **prepend** action

The examples above show actions making **GET** requests to the backend. But these actions can also make **POST** requests by setting **verb="post"** on the **<behavior>** element. For both **GET** and **POST** requests, the data from the parent **<form>** element will be serialized and included in the request. For **GET** requests, the content will be URL-encoded and added as query params. For **POST** requests, the content will be form-URL encoded and set on the request body. Since they support **POST** and form

data, update actions are often used to send data to the backend.

So far, our example of update actions require getting new content from the backend and adding it to the screen. But sometimes we just want to change the state of existing elements. The most common state to change for an element is its visibility. Hyperview has `hide`, `show`, and `toggle` actions that do just that. Like the other update actions, `hide`, `show`, and `toggle` use the `target` attribute to apply the action to an element on the current screen.

#### *Show, hide, and toggle actions*

```
<screen>
  <body>
    <text>
      <behavior action="hide" target="area" /> ❶
      Hide
    </text>

    <text>
      <behavior action="show" target="area" /> ❷
      Show
    </text>

    <text>
      <behavior action="toggle" target="area" /> ❸
      Toggle
    </text>

    <view id="area"> ❹
      <text>My fragment</text>
    </view>
  </body>
</screen>
```

- ❶ Hides the element with id "area".
- ❷ Shows the element with id "area".
- ❸ Toggles the visibility of the element with id "area".
- ❹ The element targeted by the actions.

In this example, the three buttons labeled "Hide", "Show", and "Toggle" will modify the display state of the `<view>` with ID "area". Pressing "Hide" multiple times will have no affect once the view is hidden. Likewise, pressing "Show" multiple times will have no affect once the view is showing. Pressing "Toggle" will keep flipping the visibility status of the element between showing and hidden.

Hyperview comes with other actions that modify the existing HXML. We won't cover them in detail, but I'll mention them briefly here:

- `set-value`: this action can set the value of an input element such as `<text-field>`, `<switch>`, `<select-single>`, etc.

- `select-all` and `unselect-all` work with the `<select-multiple>` element to select/deselect all options.

## System Actions

Some standard Hyperview actions don't interact with the HXML at all. Instead, they expose functionality provided by the mobile OS. For example, both Android and iOS support a system-level "Share" UI. This UI allows sharing URLs and messages from one app to another app. Hyperview has a `share` action to support this interaction. It involves a custom namespace, and share-specific attributes.

### System Share action

```
<behavior
  xmlns:share="https://instawork.com/hyperview-share" ❶
  trigger="press"
  action="share" ❷
  share:url="https://www.instawork.com" ❸
  share:message="Check out this website!" ❹
/>
```

- ❶ Defines the namespace for the share action.
- ❷ The action of this behavior will bring up the share sheet.
- ❸ URL to be shared
- ❹ Message to be shared

We've seen XML namespaces when talking about custom elements. Here, we are using a namespace for the `url` and `message` attributes on the `<behavior>`. These attribute names are generic and likely used by other components and behaviors, so the namespace ensures there will be no ambiguity. When pressed, the "share" action will trigger. The values of the `url` and `message` attributes will be passed to the system Share UI. From there, the user will be able to share the URL & message via SMS, email, or other communication apps.

The `share` action shows how a behavior action can use custom attributes to pass along extra data needed for the interactions. But some actions require even more structured data. This can be provided via child elements on the `<behavior>`. Hyperview uses this to implement the `alert` action. The `alert` action shows a customized system-level dialog box. This dialog needs configuration for a title and message, but also for customized buttons. Each button needs to then trigger another behavior when pressed. This level of configuration cannot be done with just attributes, so we use custom child elements to represent the behavior of each button.

```
<behavior
  xmlns:alert="https://hyperview.org/hyperview-alert" ❶
  trigger="press"
  action="alert" ❷
  alert:title="Continue to next screen?" ❸
  alert:message="Are you sure you want to navigate to the next screen?" ❹
>
  <alert:option alert:label="Continue"> ❺
    <behavior action="push" href="/next" /> ❻
  </alert:option>
  <alert:option alert:label="Cancel" /> ❼
</behavior>
```

- ❶ Defines the namespace for the alert action.
- ❷ The action of this behavior will bring up a system dialog box.
- ❸ Title of the dialog box.
- ❹ A "continue" option in the dialog box
- ❺ When "continue" is pressed, push a new screen onto the navigation stack.
- ❻ A "cancel" option that dismisses the dialog box.

Like the `share` behavior, `alert` uses a namespace to define some attributes and elements. The `<behavior>` element itself contains the `title` and `message` attributes for the dialog box. The button options for the dialog are defined using a new `<option>` element nested in the `<behavior>`. Notice that each `<option>` element has a label, and then optionally contains a `<behavior>` itself! This structure of the HXML allows the system dialog to trigger any interaction that can be defined as a `<behavior>`. In the example above, pressing the "Continue" button will open a new screen. But we could just as easily trigger an update action to change the current screen. We could even open a share sheet, or a second dialog box. But please don't do that in a real app! With great power comes great responsibility.

### Custom Actions

You can build a lot of mobile UIs with Hyperview's standard navigation, update, and system actions. But the standard set may not cover all interactions you will need for your mobile app. Luckily, the action system is extensible. In the same way you can add custom elements to Hyperview, you can also add custom behavior actions. Custom actions have a similar syntax to the `share` and `alert` actions, using namespaces for attributes that pass along extra data. Custom actions also have full access to the HXML of the current screen, so they can modify the state or add/remove elements from the current screen. In the next chapter, we will create a custom behavior action to enhance our mobile contacts app.

### Triggers

We've already seen the simplest type of trigger, a `press` on an element. Hyperview supports many other common triggers used in mobile apps.

## longPress

Closely related to a press is a long-press. A behavior with `trigger="longPress"` will trigger when the user presses and holds on the element. "Long-press" interactions are often used for shortcuts and power features. Sometimes, elements will support different actions for both a `press` and `longPress`. This is done using multiple `<behavior>` elements on the same UI element.

### Long-press trigger example

```
<text>
  <behavior trigger="press" action="push" href="/next-screen" /> ①
  <behavior trigger="longPress" action="push" href="/secret-screen" /> ②
  Press (or long-press) me!
</text>
```

- ① Normal press will open the next screen
- ② Long press will open a different screen

In this example, a normal press will open a new screen and request content from `/next-screen`. However, a long press will open a new screen with content from `/secret-screen`. This is a contrived example for the sake of brevity. A better UX would be for the long-press to bring up a contextual menu of shortcuts and advanced options. This could be achieved by using `action="alert"` and opening a system dialog box with the shortcuts.

## load

Sometimes we want an action to trigger as soon as the screen loads. `trigger="load"` does exactly this. One use case is to quickly load a shell of the screen, and then fill in the main content on the screen with a second update action.

### Load trigger example

```
<body>
  <view>
    <text>My app</text>
    <view id="container"> ①
      <behavior trigger="load" action="replace" href="/content" target="container"> ②
      <text>Loading...</text> ③
    </view>
  </view>
</body>
```

- ① Container element without the actual content
- ② Behavior that immediately fires off a request for `/content` to replace the container
- ③ Loading UI that appears until the content is fetched and replaced.

In this example, We load a screen with a heading ("My app") but no content. Instead, we show a `<view>` with ID "container" and some "Loading..." text. As soon as this screen loads, the behavior with `trigger="load"` fires off the `replace` action. It requests content from the `/content` path and

replaces the container view with the response.

## visible

Unlike **load**, the **visible** trigger will only execute the behavior when the element with the behavior is scrolled into the viewport on the mobile device. This allows us to The **visible** action is commonly used to implement an infinite-scroll interaction on a `<list>` of `<item>` elements. The last item in the list includes a behavior with `trigger="visible"`. The **append** action will fetch the next page of items and append them to the list.

## refresh

This trigger captures a "pull to refresh" action on `<list>` and `<view>` items. This interaction is associated with fetching up-to-date content from the backend. Thus, it's typically paired with an update or reload action to show the latest data on the screen.

### *Pull-to-refresh trigger example*

```
<body>
  <view scroll="true">
    <behavior trigger="refresh" action="reload" /> ①
    <text>No items yet</text>
  </view>
</body>
```

① When the view is pulled down to refresh, reload the screen

Note that adding a behavior with `trigger="refresh"` to a `<view>` or `<list>` will add the pull-to-refresh interaction to the element, including showing a spinner as the element is pulled down.

## focus, blur, and change

These triggers are related to interactions with input elements. Thus, they will only trigger behaviors attached to elements like `<text-field>`. **focus** and **blur** will trigger when the user focuses and blurs the input element, respectively. **change** will trigger when the value of the input element changes, like when the user types a letter in a text field. These triggers are often used with behaviors that need to perform some server-side validation on the form fields. For example, when the user types in a username and then blurs the field, a behavior could trigger on **blur** to make a request to the backend and check for uniqueness of the username. If the entered username is not unique, the response could include an error message letting the user know they need to pick a different username.

## Using Multiple Behaviors

Most of the examples shown above attach a single `<behavior>` to an element. But there's no such limitation in Hyperview; elements can define multiple behaviors. We already saw an example where a single element had different actions triggered on **press** and **longPress**. But we can also trigger multiple actions on the same trigger.

In this admittedly contrived example, we want to hide 2 elements on the screen when pressing the "Hide" button. The two elements are far apart in the HXML, and cannot be hidden by hiding a



common parent element. But, we can trigger two behaviors at the same time, each one executing a "hide" action but targeting different elements.

#### *Multiple behaviors triggering on press*

```
<screen>
  <body>
    <text id="area1">Area 1</text>

    <text>
      <behavior trigger="press" action="hide" target="area1" /> ①
      <behavior trigger="press" action="hide" target="area2" /> ②
      Hide
    </text>

    <text id="area2">Area 2</text>
  </body>
</screen>
```

① Hide element with ID "area1" when pressed

② Hide element with ID "area2" when pressed

Hyperview processes behaviors in the order they appear in the markup. In this case, the element with ID "area1" will be hidden first, followed by the element with ID "area2". Since "hide" is an instantaneous action (ie, it doesn't make an HTTP request), both elements will appear to hide simultaneously. But what if we triggered two actions that depend on responses from HTTP requests (like "replace-inner")? In that case, each individual action get processed as soon as Hyperview receives the HTTP response. Depending on network latency, the two actions could take effect in any order, and they are not guaranteed to be applied simultaneously.

We've seen elements with multiple behaviors and different triggers. And we've seen elements with multiple behaviors with the same trigger. These concepts can be mixed together too. It's not unusual for a production Hyperview app to contain several behaviors, some triggering together and others triggering on different interactions. Using multiple behaviors with custom actions keeps HXML declarative, without sacrificing functionality.

## 12.4. Summary

- Mobile app platforms push developers towards a thick-client architecture. But apps that use a thick client suffer from the same problems as SPAs on the web.
- Using the hypermedia architecture for mobile apps solves the problems with thick-client apps.
- HTML web views are one way to implement the hypermedia architecture for mobile apps. But HTML is not designed for mobile UIs, so this approach does not deliver a great user experience.
- Hyperview is an alternative approach to build mobile apps using the hypermedia architecture. Hyperview introduces a new format called HXML. It also provides an open-source mobile thin-client to render HXML.
- HXML looks similar to HTML, but it uses elements that correspond to mobile UIs, like `<screen>`,

`<header>`, `<list>` and more.

- HXML also includes input elements that implement common patterns in mobile apps, such as `<switch>`, `<select-single>`, and `<select-multiple>`.
- New UI components can be added to HXML using namespaced elements. The Hyperview client can be easily extended to render these new elements.
- Interactions in HXML are defined using `<behavior>` elements. Inspired by htmx, `<behavior>` elements decouple user interactions (triggers) from the resulting actions.
- Navigation between screens in Hyperview is done using behaviors with navigation actions, like `push`, `back`, `new`, and `close`.
- Updates to screens in Hyperview are defined using behaviors with update actions, such as `replace` and `append`.
- System interactions in Hyperview are defined using behaviors with system actions, such as `alert` and `share`.
- New actions can be added to HXML using namespaced attributes. The Hyperview client can be easily extended to interpret the new actions.
- The extensibility of HXML and the Hyperview client make it easy for developers to define custom element and behaviors. Developers can evolve Hyperview to suit their apps' requirements, while fully embracing the hypermedia architecture.

# Chapter 13. Building a Contacts App With Hyperview

This chapter covers:

- Transforming the existing Contacts web app into a native mobile app using Hyperview
- Using Hyperview behaviors to navigate between screens using stacks and modals
- Communicating between screens using the Events system
- Using the same backend to power both the web app and mobile app

Earlier chapters in this book explained the benefits of building apps using the hypermedia architecture. These benefits were demonstrated by building a robust Contacts web application. Then, Chapter 6 argued that hypermedia concepts can and should be applied to platforms other than the Web. We introduced Hyperview as an example of a hypermedia format and client specifically designed for building mobile apps. But you may still be wondering: what is it like to create a fully-featured, production-ready mobile app using Hyperview? Do I have to learn a whole new language and framework? In this chapter, we will show Hyperview in action by porting the Contacts web app to a native mobile app. You will see that almost many web development techniques (and indeed, much of the code) are completely identical when developing with Hyperview. How is that possible?

1. Our Contacts web app was built with the principle of HATEOAS (Hypermedia as the Engine of Application State). All of the app's features (retrieving, searching, editing, and creating contacts) are implemented in the backend (the `Contacts` Python class). Our mobile app, built with Hyperview, also leverages HATEOAS and relies on the backend for all of the app's logic. That means the `Contacts` Python class can power our mobile app the same way it powers the web app, without any changes required.
2. The client-server communication in the web app happens using HTTP. The HTTP server for our web app is written using the Flask framework. Hyperview also uses HTTP for client-server communication. So we can re-use the Flask routes and views from the web app for the mobile app as well.
3. The web app uses HTML for its hypermedia format, and Hyperview uses HXML. HTML and HXML are different formats, but the base syntax is similar (nested tags with attributes). This means we can use the same templating library (Jinja) for HTML and HXML. Additionally, many of the concepts of htmx are built into HXML. We can directly port web app features implemented with htmx (search, infinite loading) to HXML.

Essentially, we can re-use almost everything from the web app backend, but we will need to replace the HTML templates with HXML templates. Most of the sections in this chapter will assume we have the web contacts app running locally and listening on port 5000. The focus will be on creating new HXML templates for our mobile app's UI.

## 13.1. Creating a mobile app

But before we dive into HXML, there's one pesky requirement: the Hyperview client. When

developing web applications, you only need to worry about the server because the client (web browser) is universally available. There's no equivalent Hyperview client installed on every mobile device. Instead, we will create our own Hyperview client, customized to only talk to our server. This client can be packaged up into an Android or iOS mobile app, and distributed through the respective app stores.

Luckily, we don't need to start from scratch to implement a Hyperview client. The Hyperview code repository comes with a demo backend and a demo client built using Expo. We will use this demo client but point it to our contacts app backend as a starting point.

```
> git clone git@github.com:Instawork/hyperview.git
> cd hyperview/demo
> yarn ①
> yarn start ②
```

① Install dependencies for the demo app

② Start the Expo server to run the mobile app in the iOS simulator.

After running `yarn start`, you will be presented with a prompt asking you to open the mobile app using an Android emulator or iOS simulator. Select an option based on which developer SDK you have installed. (The screenshots in this chapter will be taken from the iOS simulator.) With any luck, you will see the Expo mobile app installed in the simulator. The mobile app will automatically launch and show a screen saying "Network request failed." That's because by default, this app is configured to make a request to <http://0.0.0.0:8085/index.xml>, but our backend is listening on port 5000. To fix this, we can make a simple configuration change in the `demo/src/constants.js` file:

```
//export const ENTRY_POINT_URL = 'http://0.0.0.0:8085/index.xml'; ①
export const ENTRY_POINT_URL = 'http://0.0.0.0:5000/'; ②
```

① The default endpoint URL in the demo app

② Setting the URL to point to our contacts app

We're not up and running yet. With our Hyperview client now pointing to the right endpoint, we see a different error, a "ParseError". That's because the backend is responding to requests with HTML content, but the Hyperview client expects an XML response (specifically, HXML). So it's time to turn our attention to our Flask backend. We will go through the Flask views, and replace the HTML templates with HXML templates. Specifically, let's support the following features to our mobile app:

- A searchable list of contacts
- Viewing the details of a contact
- Editing a contact
- Deleting a contact
- Adding a new contact

For many mobile apps that use the Hyperview client, configuring this endpoint URL is the only on-device code you need to write to deliver a full-featured app.

Think of the endpoint URL as the address you type into a web browser to open a web app.

Except in Hyperview, there is no address bar, and the browser is hard-coded to only open one URL.

This URL will load the first screen when a user launches the app.

Every other action the user can take will be declared in the HXML of that first screen.

This minimal configuration is one elegant aspect of the Hypermedia-driven architecture!

Of course, you may want to write more on-device code to support more features in your mobile app.

We will demonstrate how to do that later in this chapter, in the section called "Extending the Client".

## 13.2. A Searchable List of Contacts

We will start building our Hyperview app with the endpoint screen, the list of contacts. For the initial version of this screen, let's support the following features from the web app:

- display a scrollable list of contacts
- "search-as-you-type" field above the list
- "infinite-scroll" to load more contacts as the user scrolls through

Additionally, we will add a "pull-to-refresh" interaction on the list, since users expect this from list UIs in mobile apps.

If you recall, all of the pages in the Contacts web app extended a common base template, `layout.html`. We need a similar base template for the screens of the mobile app. This base template will contain the style rules for our UI, and a basic structure common to all screens. Let's call it `layout.xml`.

```
<doc xmlns="https://hyperview.org/hyperview">
  <screen>
    <styles><!-- omitted for brevity --></styles>
    <body style="body" safe-area="true">
      <header style="header">
        {% block header %} ❶
          <text style="header-title">Contacts.app</text>
        {% endblock %}
      </header>

      <view style="main">
        {% block content %}{% endblock %} ❷
      </view>
    </body>
  </screen>
</doc>
```

- ❶ The header section of the template, with a default title
- ❷ The content section of the template, to be provided out by other templates.

We covered the HXML tags and attributes in the previous chapter. This template sets up a basic screen layout using `<doc>`, `<screen>`, `<body>`, `<header>`, and `<view>` tags. Note that the HXML syntax plays well with the Jinja templating library. Here, we're using Jinja's blocks to define two sections (`header` and `content`) that will hold the unique content of a screen. With our base template completed, we can create a template specifically for the contacts list screen.

Start of `hv/index.xml`

```
{% extends 'hv/layout.xml' %} ❶

{% block content %} ❷
  <form> ❸
    <text-field name="q" value="" placeholder="Search..." style="search-field" />
    <list id="contacts-list"> ❹
      {% include 'hv/rows.xml' %}
    </list>
  </form>
{% endblock %}
```

- ❶ Extend the base layout template
- ❷ Override the `content` block of the layout template
- ❸ Create a search form that will issue an HTTP `GET` to `/contacts`
- ❹ The list of contacts, using a Jinja `include` tag.

This template extends the base `layout.xml`, and overrides the `content` block with a `<form>`. At first, it might seem strange that the form wraps both the `<text-field>` and the `<list>` elements. But remember: in Hyperview, the form data gets included in any request originating from a child

element. We will soon add interactions to the list (pull to refresh) that will require the form data. Note the use of a Jinja `include` tag to render the HXML for the rows of contacts in the list (`hv/rows.xml`). Just like in the HTML templates, we can use the `include` to break up our HXML into smaller pieces. It also allows the server to respond with just the `rows.xml` template for interactions like searching, infinite scroll, and pull-to-refresh.

`hv/rows.xml`

```
<items xmlns="https://hyperview.org/hyperview"> ❶
  {% for contact in contacts %} ❷
    <item key="{{ contact.id }}" style="contact-item"> ❸
      <text style="contact-item-label">
        {% if contact.first %}
          {{ contact.first }} {{ contact.last }}
        {% elif contact.phone %}
          {{ contact.phone }}
        {% elif contact.email %}
          {{ contact.email }}
        {% endif %}
      </text>
    </item>
  {% endfor %}
</items>
```

- ❶ An HXML element that groups a set of `<item>` elements in a common parent
- ❷ Iterate over the contacts that were passed in to the template
- ❸ Render an `<item>` for each contact, showing the name, phone number, or email.

In the web app, each row in the list showed the contact's name, phone number, and email address. But in a mobile app, we have less real-estate. It would be hard to cram all this information into one line. Instead, the row just shows the contact's first and last name, and falls back to email or phone if the name is not set. To render the row, we again make use of Jinja template syntax to render dynamic text with data passed to the template.

We now have templates for the base layout, the contacts screen, and the contact rows. But we still have to update the Flask views to use these templates. Let's take a look at the `contacts()` view in its current form, written for the web app:

app.py

```
@app.route("/contacts")
def contacts():
    search = request.args.get("q")
    page = int(request.args.get("page", 1))
    if search:
        contacts_set = Contact.search(search)
        if request.headers.get('HX-Trigger') == 'search':
            return render_template("rows.html", contacts=contacts_set, page=page)
    else:
        contacts_set = Contact.all(page)
    return render_template("index.html", contacts=contacts_set, page=page)
```

This view supports fetching a set of contacts based on two query params, `q` and `page`. It also decides whether to render the full page (`index.html`) or just the contact rows (`rows.html`) based on the `HX-Trigger` header. This presents a minor problem. The `HX-Trigger` header is set by the `htmx` library; there's no equivalent feature in Hyperview. Moreover, there are multiple scenarios in Hyperview that require us to respond with just the contact rows:

- searching
- pull-to-refresh
- loading the next page of contacts

Since we can't depend on a header like `HX-Trigger`, we need a different way to detect if the client needs the full screen or just the rows in the response. We can do this by introducing a new query param, `rows_only`. When this param has the value `true`, the view will respond to the request by rendering the `rows.xml` template. Otherwise, it will respond with the `index.xml` template:

app.py

```
@app.route("/contacts")
def contacts():
    search = request.args.get("q")
    page = int(request.args.get("page", 1))
    rows_only = request.args.get("rows_only") == "true" ①
    if search:
        contacts_set = Contact.search(search)
    else:
        contacts_set = Contact.all(page)

    template_name = "hv/rows.xml" if rows_only else "hv/index.xml" ②
    return render_template(template_name, contacts=contacts_set, page=page)
```

① Check for a new `rows_only` query param

② Render the appropriate HXML template based on `rows_only`

There's one more change we have to make. Flask assumes that most views will respond with HTML. So Flask defaults the `Content-Type` response header to a value of `text/html`. But the Hyperview client



expects to receive HXML content, indicated by a `Content-Type` response header with value `application/vnd.hyperview+xml`. The client will reject responses with a different content type. To fix this, we need to explicitly set the `Content-Type` response header in our Flask views. We will do this by introducing a new helper function, `render_to_response()`:

`app.py`

```
def render_to_response(template_name, *args, **kwargs):
    content = render_template(template_name, *args, **kwargs) ①
    response = make_response(content) ②
    response.headers['Content-Type'] = 'application/vnd.hyperview+xml' ③
    return response
```

① Renders the given template with the supplied arguments and keyword arguments.

② Create an explicit response object with the rendered template

③ Sets the response `Content-Type` header to XML.

As you can see, this helper function uses `render_template()` under the hood. `render_template()` returns a string. This helper function uses that string to create an explicit `Response` object. The response object has a `headers` attribute, allowing us to set and change the response headers. Specifically, `render_to_response()` sets `Content-Type` to `application/xml` so that the Hyperview client recognizes the content. This helper is a drop-in replacement for `render_template` in our views. So all we need to do is update the last line of the `contacts()` function.

`contacts()` function

```
return render_to_response(template_name, contacts=contacts_set, page=page) ①
```

① Render the HXML template to an XML response.

With these changes to the `contacts()` view, we can finally see the fruits of our labor. After restarting the backend and refreshing the screen in our mobile app, we can see the contacts screen!

[screenshot hyperview list] | *screenshot\_hyperview\_list.png*

*Figure 13. Contacts Screen*

## Searching Contacts

So far, we have a mobile app that displays a screen with a list of contacts. But our UI doesn't support any interactions. Typing a query in the search field doesn't filter the list of contacts. Let's add a behavior to the search field to implement a search-as-you-type interaction. This requires expanding `<text-field>` to add a `<behavior>` element.

```

<text-field name="q" value="" placeholder="Search..." style="search-field">
  <behavior
    trigger="change" ❶
    action="replace-inner" ❷
    target="contacts-list" ❸
    href="/contacts?rows_only=true" ❹
    verb="get" ❺
  />
</text-field>

```

- ❶ This behavior will trigger when the value of the text field changes
- ❷ When the behavior triggers, the action will replace the content inside the target element.
- ❸ The target of the action is the element with ID `contacts-list`.
- ❹ The replacement content will be fetched from this URL path.
- ❺ The replacement content will be fetched with the `GET` HTTP method.

The first thing you'll notice is that we changed the text field from using a self-closing tag (`<text-field />`) to using opening and closing tags (`<text-field>...</text-field>`). This allows us to add a child `<behavior>` element to define an interaction. The `trigger="change"` attribute tells Hyperview that a change to the value of the text field will trigger an action. Any time the user edits the content of the text field by adding or deleting characters, an action will trigger. The remaining attributes on the `<behavior>` element define the action. `action="replace-inner"` means the action will update content on the screen, by replacing the HXML content of an element with new content. For `replace-inner` to do its thing, we need to know 2 things: the current element on the screen that will be targeted by the action, and the content that will be used for the replacement. `target="contacts-list"` tells us the ID of the current element. Note that we set `id="contacts-list"` on the `<list>` element in `index.xml`. So when the user enters a search query into the text field, Hyperview will replace the content of `<list>` (a bunch of `<item>` elements) with new content (`<item>` elements that match the search query). relative href. (The domain is inferred from the domain used to fetch the screen). Note that `href` includes our `rows_only` query param; we want the response to only include the rows and not the entire screen.

[screenshot hyperview search] | *screenshot\_hyperview\_search.png*

Figure 14. Searchings for Contacts

That's all it takes to add search-as-you-type functionality to our mobile app! As the user types a search query, the client will make requests to the backend and replace the list with the search results. You may be wondering, how does the backend know the query to use? The `href` attribute in the behavior does not include the `q` param expected by our backend. But remember, in `index.xml`, we wrapped the `<text-field>` and `<list>` elements with a parent `<form>` element. The `<form>` element defines a group of inputs that will be serialized and included in any HTTP requests triggered by its child elements. In this case, the `<form>` element surrounds the search behavior and the text field. So the value of the `<text-field>` will be included in our HTTP request for the search results. Since we are making a `GET` request, the name and value of the text field will be serialized as a query param. Any existing query params on the `href` will be preserved. This means the actual

HTTP request to our backend looks like `GET /contacts?rows_only=true&q=Car`. Our backend already supports the `q` param for searching, so the response will include rows that match the string "Car".

## Infinite scroll

If the user has hundreds or thousands of contacts, loading them all at once may result in poor app performance. That's why most mobile apps with long lists implement an interaction known as "infinite scroll". The app loads a fixed number of initial items in the list, let's say 100 items. If the user scrolls to the bottom of the list, they see a spinner indicating more content is loading. Once the content is available, the spinner is replaced with the next page of 100 items. These items are appended to the list, they don't replace the first set of items. So the list now contains 200 items. If the user scrolls to the bottom of the list again, they will see another spinner, and the app will load the next set of content. Infinite scroll improves app performance in two ways:

- The initial request for 100 items will be processed quickly, with predictable latency.
- Subsequent requests can also be fast and predictable.
- If the user doesn't scroll to the bottom of the list, the app won't have to make subsequent requests.

Our Flask backend already supports pagination on the `/contacts` endpoint via the `page` query param. We just need to modify our HXML templates to make use of this parameter. To do this, let's edit `rows.xml` to add a new `<item>` below the Jinja for-loop:

Snippet of `hv/rows.xml`

```
<items xmlns="https://hyperview.org/hyperview">
  {% for contact in contacts %}
    <item key="{{ contact.id }}" style="contact-item">
      <!-- omitted for brevity -->
    </item>
  {% endfor %}
  {% if contacts|length > 0 %}
    <item key="load-more" id="load-more" style="load-more-item"> ①
      <behavior
        trigger="visible" ②
        action="replace" ③
        target="load-more" ④
        href="/contacts?rows_only=true&page={{ page + 1 }}" ⑤
        verb="get"
      />
      <spinner /> ⑥
    </item>
  {% endif %}
</items>
```

- ① Include an extra `<item>` in the list to show the spinner
- ② The item behavior triggers when visible in the viewport
- ③ When triggered, the behavior will replace an element on the screen

- ④ The element to be replaced is the item itself (ID `load-more`)
- ⑤ Replace the item with the next page of content
- ⑥ The spinner element

If the current list of contacts passed to the template is empty, we can assume there's no more contacts to fetch from the backend. So we use a Jinja conditional to only include this new `<item>` if the list of contacts is non-empty. This new `<item>` element gets an ID and a behavior. The behavior defines the infinite scroll interaction. Up until now, we've seen `trigger` values of `change` and `refresh`. But to implement infinite scroll, we need a way to trigger the action when the user scrolls to the bottom of the list. The `visible` trigger can be used for this exact purpose. It will trigger the action when the element with the behavior is visible in the device viewport. In this case, the new `<item>` element is the last item in the list, so the action will trigger when the user scrolls down far enough for the item to enter the viewport. As soon as the item is visible, the action will make an HTTP GET request, and replace the loading `<item>` element with the response content. Note that our href includes the `rows_only=true` query param, or our response will only include HXML for the contact items, and not the entire screen. Also, we're passing the `page` query param, incrementing the current page number to ensure we load the next page.

What happens when there's more than one page of items? The initial screen will include the first 100 items, plus the "load-more" item at the bottom. When the user scrolls to the bottom of the screen, Hyperview will request the second page of items (`&page=2`), and replace the "load-more" item with the new items. But this second page of items will include a new "load-more" item. So once the user scrolls through all of the items from the second page, Hyperview will again request more items (`&page=3`). And once again, the "load-more" item will be replaced with the new items. This will continue until all of the items will be loaded on the screen. At that point, there will be no more contacts to return, the response will not include another "load-more" item, and our pagination is over.

## Pull-to-refresh

Pull-to-refresh is a common interaction in mobile apps, especially on screens featuring dynamic content. It works like this: At the top of a scrolling view, the user pulls the scrolling content downwards with a swipe-down gesture. This reveals a spinner "below" the content. Pulling the content down sufficiently far will trigger a refresh. While the content refreshes, the spinner remains visible on screen, indicating to the user that the action is still taking place. Once the content is refreshed, the content retracts back up to its default position, hiding the spinner and letting the user know that the interaction is done.

[screenshot hyperview refresh cropped] | *screenshot\_hyperview\_refresh\_cropped.png*

*Figure 15. Pull-to-refresh*

This pattern is so common and useful that it's built in to Hyperview via the `refresh` action. Let's add pull-to-refresh to our list of contacts to see it in action.

```
<list id="contacts-list"
  trigger="refresh" ①
  action="replace-inner" ②
  target="contacts-list" ③
  href="/contacts?rows_only=true" ④
  verb="get" ⑤
>
  {% include 'hv/rows.xml' %}
</list>
```

- ① This behavior will trigger when the user does a "pull-to-refresh" gesture.
- ② When the behavior triggers, this action will replace the content inside the target element.
- ③ The target of the action is the `<list>` element itself.
- ④ The replacement content will be fetched from this URL path.
- ⑤ The replacement content will be fetched with the `GET` HTTP method.

You'll notice something unusual in the snippet above: rather than adding a `<behavior>` element to the `<list>`, we added the behavior attributes directly to the `<list>` element. This is a shorthand notation that's sometimes useful for specifying single behaviors on an element. It is equivalent to adding a `<behavior>` element to the `<list>` with the same attributes. So why did I use the shorthand syntax here? It has to do with the action, `replace-inner`. Remember, this action replaces all child elements of the target with the new content. This includes `<behavior>` elements too! Let's say our `<list>` did contain a `<behavior>`. If the user did a search or pull-to-refresh, we would replace the content of `<list>` with the content from `rows.xml`. The `<behavior>` would no longer be defined on the `<list>`, and subsequent attempts to pull-to-refresh would not work. By defining the behavior as attributes of `<list>`, the behavior will persist even when replacing the items in the list. Generally, I prefer to use explicit `<behavior>` elements in my HXML. It makes it easier to define multiple behaviors, and to move the behavior around while refactoring. But the shorthand syntax is good to apply in situations like this.

## Viewing The Details Of A Contact

Now that our contacts list screen is in good shape, we can start adding other screens to our app. The natural next step is to create a details screen, which appears when the user taps an item in the contacts list. Let's update the template that renders the contact `<item>` elements, and add a behavior to show the details screen.

hv/rows.xml

```
<items xmlns="https://hyperview.org/hyperview">
  {% for contact in contacts %}
    <item key="{{ contact.id }}" style="contact-item">
      <behavior trigger="press" action="push" href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}" /> ①
      <text style="contact-item-label">
        <!-- omitted for brevity -->
      </text>
    </item>
  {% endfor %}
</items>
```

① Behavior to push the contact details screen onto the stack when pressed.

Our Flask backend already has a route for serving the contact details at `/contacts/<contact_id>`. In our template, we use a Jinja variable to dynamically generate the URL path for the current contact in the for-loop. We also used the "push" action to show the details by pushing a new screen onto the stack. If you reload the app, you can now tap any contact in the list, and Hyperview will open the new screen. However, the new screen will show an error message. That's because our backend is still returning HTML in the response, and the Hyperview client expects HXML. Let's update the backend to respond with HXML and the proper headers.

app.py

```
@app.route("/contacts/<contact_id>")
def contacts_view(contact_id=0):
    contact = Contact.find(contact_id)
    return render_to_response("hv/show.xml", contact=contact) ①
```

① Generate an XML response from a new template file.

Just like with the `contacts()` view, `contacts_view()` uses `render_to_response()` to set the `Content-Type` header on the response. We're also generating the response from a new HXML template, which we can create now:

```

{% extends 'hv/layout.xml' %} ❶

{% block header %} ❷
  <text style="header-button">
    <behavior trigger="press" action="back" /> ❸
    Back
  </text>
{% endblock %}

{% block content %} ❹
<view style="details">
  <text style="contact-name">{{ contact.first }} {{ contact.last }}</text>

  <view style="contact-section">
    <text style="contact-section-label">Phone</text>
    <text style="contact-section-info">{{contact.phone}}</text>
  </view>

  <view style="contact-section">
    <text style="contact-section-label">Email</text>
    <text style="contact-section-info">{{contact.email}}</text>
  </view>
</view>
{% endblock %}

```

- ❶ Extend the base layout template
- ❷ Override the **header** block of the layout template to include a "Back" button
- ❸ Behavior to navigate to the previous screen when pressed
- ❹ Override the **content** block to show the full details of the selected contact.

The contacts detail screen extends the base **layout.xml** template, just like we did in **index.xml**. This time, we're overriding content in both the **header** block and **content** block. Overriding the header block lets us add a "Back" button with a behavior. When pressed, the Hyperview client will unwind the navigation stack and return the user to the contacts list. Note that triggering this behavior is not the only way to navigate back. The Hyperview client respects navigation conventions on different platforms. On iOS, users can also navigate to the previous screen by swiping right from the left edge of the device. On Android, users can also navigate to the previous screen by pressing the hardware back button. We don't need to specify anything extra in the HXML to get these interactions!

[screenshot hyperview detail cropped] | *screenshot\_hyperview\_detail\_cropped.png*

Figure 16. Contact Details Screen

With just a few simple changes, we've gone from a single-screen app to a multi-screen app. Note that we didn't need to change anything in the actual mobile app code to support our new screen. This is a big deal. In traditional mobile app development, adding screens can be a significant task. Developers need to create the new screen, insert it into the appropriate place of the navigation hierarchy, and write code to open the new screen from existing screens. In Hyperview, we just

added a behavior with `action="push"`.

## 13.3. Editing a Contact

So far, our app lets us browse a list of contacts, and view details of a specific contact. Wouldn't it be nice to update the name, phone number, or email of a contact? Let's add UI to edit contacts as our next enhancement.

First we have to figure out how we want to display the editing UI. We could push a new editing screen onto the stack, the same way we pushed the contact details screen. But that's not the best design from a user-experience perspective. Pushing new screens makes sense when drilling down into data, like going from a list to a single item. But editing is not a "drill-down" interaction, it's a mode switch between viewing and editing. So instead of pushing a new screen, let's replace the current screen with the editing UI. That means we need to add a button and behavior that use the `reload` action. This button can be added to the header of the contact details screen.

Snippet of `hv/show.xml`

```
{% block header %}
  <text style="header-button">
    <behavior trigger="press" action="back" />
    Back
  </text>

  <text style="header-button"> ①
    <behavior trigger="press" action="reload" href="/contacts/{{contact.id}}/edit" />
  ②
    Edit
  </text>
{% endblock %}
```

① The new "Edit" button

② Behavior to reload the current screen with the edit screen when pressed

Once again, we're reusing an existing Flask route (`/contacts/<contact_id>/edit`) for the edit UI, and filling in the contact ID using data passed to the Jinja template. We also need to update the `contacts_edit_get()` view to return an XML response based on an HXML template (`hv/edit.xml`). I'll skip the code sample because the needed changes are identical to what we applied to `contacts_view()` in the previous section. Instead, let's focus on the template for the edit screen.



```

{% extends 'hv/layout.xml' %}

{% block header %}
  <text style="header-button">
    <behavior trigger="press" action="back" href="#" />
    Back
  </text>
{% endblock %}

{% block content %}
<form> ①
  <view id="form-fields"> ②
    {% include 'hv/form_fields.xml' %} ③
  </view>

  <view style="button"> ④
    <behavior
      trigger="press"
      action="replace-inner"
      target="form-fields"
      href="/contacts/{{contact.id}}/edit"
      verb="post"
    />
    <text style="button-label">Save</text>
  </view>
</form>
{% endblock %}

```

- ① Form wrapping the input fields and buttons
- ② Container with ID, containing the input fields
- ③ Template include to render the input fields
- ④ Button to submit the form data and update the input fields container

Since the edit screen needs to send data to the backend, we wrap the entire content section in a `<form>` element. This ensures the form field data will be included in the HTTP requests to our backend. Within the `<form>` element, our UI is divided into two sections: the form fields, and the Save button. The actual form fields are defined in a separate template (`form_fields.xml`) and added to the edit screen using a Jinja include tag.

```

<view style="edit-group">
  <view style="edit-field">
    <text-field name="first_name" placeholder="First name" value="{{ contact.first }}"
  /> ❶
    <text style="edit-field-error">{{ contact.errors.first }}</text> ❷
  </view>

  <view style="edit-field"> ❸
    <text-field name="last_name" placeholder="Last name" value="{{ contact.last }}" />
    <text style="edit-field-error">{{ contact.errors.last }}</text>
  </view>

  <!-- same markup for contact.email and contact.phone -->
</view>

```

- ❶ Text input holding the current value for the contact's first name
- ❷ Text element that could display errors from the contact model
- ❸ Another text field, this time for the contact's last name

I omitted the code for the contact's phone number and email address, because they follow the same pattern as the first and last name. Each contact field has its own `<text-field>`, and a `<text>` element below it to display possible errors. The `<text-field>` has two important attributes:

- **name** defines the name to use when serializing the text-field's value into form data for HTTP requests. We are using the same names as the web app from previous chapters (**first\_name**, **last\_name**, **phone**, **email**). That way, we don't need to make changes in our backend to parse the form data.
- **value** defines the pre-filled data in the text field. Since we are editing an existing contact, it makes sense to pre-fill the text field with the current name, phone, or email.

You might be wondering, why did I choose to define the form fields in a separate template (**form\_fields.xml**)? To understand that decision, we need to first discuss the "Save" button. When pressed, the Hyperview client will make an HTTP **POST** request to **contacts/<contact\_id>/edit**, with form data serialized from the `<text-field>` inputs. The HXML response will replace the contents of form field container (ID **form-fields**). But what should that response be? That depends on the validity of the form data:

1. If the data is invalid (eg duplicate email address), our UI will remain in the editing mode and show error messages on the invalid fields. This allows the user to correct the errors and try saving again.
2. If the data is valid, our backend will persist the edits, and our UI will switch back to a display mode (the contact details UI).

So our backend needs to distinguish between a valid and invalid edits. To support these two scenarios, let's make some changes to the existing **contacts\_edit\_post()** view in the Flask app.

```

@app.route("/contacts/<contact_id>/edit", methods=["POST"])
def contacts_edit_post(contact_id=0):
    c = Contact.find(contact_id)
    c.update(request.form['first_name'], request.form['last_name'],
request.form['phone'], request.form['email']) ①
    if c.save(): ②
        flash("Updated Contact!")
        return render_to_response("hv/form_fields.xml", contact=c, saved=True) ③
    else:
        return render_to_response("hv/form_fields.xml", contact=c) ④

```

- ① Update the contact object from the request's form data.
- ② Attempt to persist the updates. This returns `False` for invalid data.
- ③ On success, render the form fields template, and pass a `saved` flag to the template
- ④ On failure, render the form fields template. Error messages are present on the contact object.

This view already contains conditional logic based on whether the contact model `save()` succeeds. If `save()` fails, we render the `form_fields.xml` template. `contact.errors` will contain error messages for the invalid fields, which will be rendered into the `<text style="edit-field-error">` elements. If `save()` succeeds, we will also render the `form_fields.xml` template. But this time, the template will get a `saved` flag, indicating success. We will update the template to use this flag to implement our desired UI: switching the UI back to display mode.

hv/form\_fields.xml

```

<view style="edit-group">
  {% if saved %} ①
    <behavior
      trigger="load" ②
      action="reload" ③
      href="/contacts/{{contact.id}}" ④
    />
  {% endif %}

  <view style="edit-field">
    <text-field name="first_name" placeholder="First name" value="{{ contact.first }}"
  />
    <text style="edit-field-error">{{ contact.errors.first }}</text>
  </view>

  <!-- same markup for the other fields -->
</view>

```

- ① Only include this behavior after successfully saving a contact.
- ② Trigger the behavior immediately
- ③ The behavior will reload the entire screen

- ④ The screen will be reloaded with the contact details screen.

The Jinja template conditional ensures that our behavior only renders on successful saves, and not when the screen first opens (or the user submits invalid data). On success, the template includes a behavior that triggers immediately thanks to `trigger="load"`. The action reloads the current screen with the Contact Details screen (from the `/contacts/<contact_id>` route). The result? When the user hits "Save", our backend persists the new contact data, and the screen switches back to the Details screen. Since the app will make a new HTTP request to get the contact details, it's guaranteed to show the freshly saved edits.

#### *Why not use a redirect?*

You may remember the web app version of this code behaved a little differently. On a successful save, the view returned `redirect("/contacts/" + str(contact_id))`. This HTTP redirect would tell the web browser to navigate to the contact details page.

This approach is not supported in Hyperview.

Why?

A web app's navigation stack is simple: a linear sequence of pages, with only one active page at a time.

Navigation in a mobile app is considerably more complex.

Mobile apps use a nested hierarchy of navigation stacks, modals, and tabs.

All screens in this hierarchy are active, and may be displayed instantly in response to user actions.

In this world, how would the Hyperview client interpret an HTTP redirect?

Should it reload the current screen, push a new one, or navigate to a screen in the stack with the same URL?

Instead of making a choice that would be suboptimal for many scenarios, Hyperview takes a different approach.

Server-controlled redirects are not possible, but the backend can render navigation behaviors into the HXML.

This is what we do switch from the Edit UI to the Details UI in the code above.

Think of these as client-side redirects, or better yet client-side navigations.

We now have a working Edit UI in our contacts app. Users can enter the Edit mode by pressing a button on the contact details screen. In the Edit mode, they can update the contact's data and save it to the backend. If the backend rejects the edits as invalid, the app stays in Edit mode and shows the validation errors. If the backend accepts and persists the edits, the app will switch back to the details mode, showing the updated contact data.

Let's add one more enhancement to the Edit UI. It would be nice to let the user switch away from the Edit mode without needing to save the contact. This is typically done by providing a "Cancel" action. We can add this as a new button below the "Save" button.

```
<view style="button">
  <behavior trigger="press" action="replace-inner" target="form-fields"
href="/contacts/{{contact.id}}/edit" verb="post" />
  <text style="button-label">Save</text>
</view>
<view style="button"> ❶
  <behavior
    trigger="press"
    action="reload" ❷
    href="/contacts/{{contact.id}}" ❸
  />
  <text style="button-label">Cancel</text>
</view>
```

- ❶ New Cancel button on the edit screen
- ❷ When pressed, reload the entire screen
- ❸ The screen will be reloaded with the contact details screen.

This is the same technique we used to switch from the edit UI to the details UI upon successfully editing the contact. But pressing "Cancel" will update the UI faster than pressing "Save". On save, the app will first make a **POST** request to save the data, and then a **GET** request for the details screen. Cancelling skips the **POST**, and immediately make the **GET** request.

[screenshot hyperview edit] | *screenshot\_hyperview\_edit.png*

Figure 17. Contact Edit Screen

## Updating the Contacts List

At this point, we can claim to have fully implemented the Edit UI. But there's a problem. In fact, if we stopped here, users may even consider the app to be buggy! Why? It has to do with syncing the app state across multiple screens. Let's walk through this series of interactions:

1. Launch the app to the Contacts List.
2. Press on the contact "Joe Blow" to load his Contact Details.
3. Press Edit to switch to the edit mode, and change the contact's first name to "Joseph".
4. Press Save to switch back to viewing mode. The contact's name is now "Joseph Blow".
5. Hit the back button to return to the Contacts List.

Did you catch the issue? Our Contacts list is still showing the same list of names as when we launched the app. The contact we just renamed to "Joseph" is still showing up in the list as "Joe". This is a general problem in Hypermedia applications. The client does not have a notion of shared data across different parts of the UI. Updates in one part of the app will not automatically update other parts of the app. Luckily, there's a solution to this problem in Hyperview: events. Events are built into the behavior system, and allow lightweight communication between different parts of the UI.

Events are a client-side feature of Hyperview.

You are probably familiar with events from working with HTML and the DOM.

DOM Elements will dispatch events as a result of user interactions.

Scripts can listen for these events, and respond to them by running arbitrary JavaScript code.

Events in Hyperview are a good deal simpler, but they don't require any scripting and can be defined declaratively in the HXML.

This is done through the behavior system.

Events require adding a new behavior attribute, action type, and trigger type:

- `'event-name'`: This attribute of `'<behavior>'` defines the name of the event that will either be dispatched or listened for.

- `'action="dispatch-event"'`: When triggered, this behavior will dispatch an event with the name defined by the `'event-name'` attribute.

This event is dispatched globally across the entire Hyperview app.

- `'trigger="on-event"'`: This behavior will trigger if another behavior in the app dispatches an event matching the `'event-name'` attribute.

If a `'<behavior>'` element uses `'action="dispatch-event"'` or `'trigger="on-event"'`, it must also define an `'event-name'`.

Note that multiple behaviors can dispatch an event with the same name.

Likewise, multiple behaviors can trigger on the same event name.

Let's look at this simple behavior:

```
'<behavior trigger="press" action="toggle" target="container" />'
```

Pressing an element containing this behavior will toggle the visibility of an element with the ID "container".

But what if the element we want to toggle is on a different screen?

The "toggle" action and target ID lookup only work on the current screen, so this solution wouldn't work.

The solution is to create two behaviors, one on each screen, communicating via events:

- Screen A: `'<behavior trigger="press" action="dispatch-event" event-name="button-pressed" />'`

- Screen B: `'<behavior trigger="on-event" event-name="button-pressed" action="toggle" target="container" />'`

Pressing an element containing the first behavior (on Screen A) will dispatch an event with the name "button-pressed".

The second behavior (on Screen B) will trigger on an event with this name, and toggle the visibility of an element with ID "container".

Events have plenty of uses, but the most common is to inform different screens about backend state changes that require the UI to be re-fetched.

We know enough about Hyperview's event system to solve the bug in our app. When the user saves

a change to a contact, we need to dispatch an event from the Details screen. And the Contacts screen needs to listen to that event, and reload itself to reflect the edits. Since the `form_fields.xml` template already gets the `saved` flag when the backend successfully saves a contact, it's a good place to dispatch the event:

*Snippet from `hv/form_fields.xml`*

```
{% if saved %}
  <behavior
    trigger="load" ①
    action="dispatch-event" ②
    event-name="contact-updated" ③
  />
  <behavior ④
    trigger="load"
    action="reload"
    href="/contacts/{{contact.id}}"
  />
{% endif %}
```

- ① Trigger the behavior immediately
- ② The behavior will dispatch an event
- ③ The event name is "contact-updated"
- ④ The existing behavior to show the Details UI.

Now, we just need the contacts list to listen for the `contact-updated` event, and reload itself:

*Snippet from `hv/index.xml`*

```
<form>
  <behavior
    trigger="on-event" ①
    event-name="contact-updated" ②
    action="replace-inner" ③
    target="contacts-list"
    href="/contacts?rows_only=true"
    verb="get"
  />
  <!-- text-field omitted -->
  <list id="contacts-list">
    {% include 'hv/rows.xml' %}
  </list>
</form>
```

- ① Trigger the behavior on event dispatch
- ② Trigger the behavior for dispatched events with the name "contact-updated"
- ③ When triggered, replace the contents of the `<list>` element with rows from the backend

Any time the user edits a contact, the Contacts List screen will update to reflect the edits. The addition of these two `<behavior>` elements fixes the bug: the Contacts List screen will correctly show "Joseph Blow" in the list. Note that we intentionally added the new behavior inside the `<form>` element. This ensures the triggered request will preserve any search query. To show what I mean, let's revisit the set of steps that demonstrated the buggy behavior. Assume that before pressing on "Joe Blow", the user had searched the contacts by typing "Joe" in the search field. When the user later updates the contact to "Joseph Blow", our template dispatches the "contact-updated" event, which triggers the `replace-inner` behavior on the contact list screen. Due to the parent `<form>` element, the search query "Joe" will be serialized with the request: `GET /contacts?rows_only=true&q=Joe`. Since the name "Joseph" doesn't match the query "Joe", the contact we edited will not appear in the list (until the user clears out the query). Our app's state remains consistent across our backend and all active screens.

Events introduce a level of abstraction to behaviors. So far, we've seen that editing a contact will cause the list of contacts to refresh. But the list of contacts should also refresh after other actions, such as deleting a contact or adding a new contact. As long as our HXML responses for deletion or creation include a behavior to dispatch a `contact-updated` event, then we will get the desired refresh behavior on the contacts list screen. The screen doesn't care what causes the `contact-updated` event to be dispatched. It just knows what it needs to do when it happens.

## 13.4. Deleting a Contact

Speaking of deleting a contact, this is a good next feature to implement. We will let users delete a contact from the Edit UI. So let's add a new button to `edit.xml`.

Snippet of `hv/edit.xml`

```
<view style="button">
  <behavior trigger="press" action="replace-inner" target="form-fields"
  href="/contacts/{{contact.id}}/edit" verb="post" />
  <text style="button-label">Save</text>
</view>
<view style="button">
  <behavior trigger="press" action="reload" href="/contacts/{{contact.id}}/" />
  <text style="button-label">Cancel</text>
</view>
<view style="button"> ①
  <behavior
    trigger="press"
    action="append" ②
    target="form-fields"
    href="/contacts/{{contact.id}}/delete" ④
    verb="post"
  />
  <text style="button-label button-label-delete">Delete Contact</text>
</view>
```

① New Delete Contact button on the edit screen

② When pressed, append HXML to a container on the screen



③ The HXML will be fetched by making a `POST /contacts/<contact_id>/delete` request

The HXML for the Delete button is pretty similar to the Save button, but there are a few subtle differences. Remember, pressing the Save button results in one of two expected outcomes: failing and showing validation errors on the form, or succeeding and switching to the contact details screen. To support the first outcome (failing and showing validation errors), the save behavior replaces the contents of the `<view id="form-fields">` container with a re-rendered version of `form_fields.xml`. Therefore, using the `replace-inner` action makes sense.

Deletion does not involve a validation step, so there's only one expected outcome: successfully deleting the contact. When deletion succeeds, the contact no longer exists. It doesn't make sense to show the edit UI or contact details for a non-existent contact. Instead, our app will navigate back to the previous screen (the contacts list). Our response will only include behaviors that trigger immediately, there's no UI to change. Therefore, using the `append` action will preserve the current UI while Hyperview runs the actions.

Snippet of `hv/deleted.xml`

```
<view>
  <behavior trigger="load" action="dispatch-event" event-name="contact-updated" /> ①
  <behavior trigger="load" action="back" /> ②
</view>
```

① On load, dispatch the `contact-updated` event to update the contact lists screen

② Navigate back to the contacts list screen.

Note that in addition to behavior to navigate back, this template also includes a behavior to dispatch the `contact-updated` event. In the previous chapter section, we added a behavior to `index.xml` to refresh the list when that event is dispatched. By dispatching the event after a deletion, we will make sure the deleted contact gets removed from the list.

Once again, I'm going to skip over the changes to the Flask backend. Suffice it to say, we will need to update the `contacts_delete()` view to respond with the `hv/deleted.xml` template. And we need to update the route to support `POST` in addition to `DELETE`, since the Hyperview client only understands `GET` and `POST`.

We now have a fully functioning deletion feature! But it's not the most user-friendly: it takes one accidental tap to permanently delete a contact. For destructive actions like deleting a contact, it's always a good idea to ask the user for confirmation. We can add a confirmation to the delete behavior by using the `alert` system action described in the previous chapter. As you recall, the `alert` action will show a system dialog box with buttons that can trigger other behaviors. All we have to do is wrap the delete `<behavior>` in a behavior that uses `action="alert"`.

```
<view style="button">
  <behavior ①
    xmlns:alert="https://hyperview.org/hyperview-alert"
    trigger="press"
    action="alert"
    alert:title="Confirm delete"
    alert:message="Are you sure you want to delete {{ contact.first }}?"
  >
    <alert:option alert:label="Confirm"> ②
      <behavior ③
        trigger="press"
        action="append"
        target="form-fields"
        href="/contacts/{{contact.id}}/delete"
        verb="post"
      />
    </alert:option>
    <alert:option alert:label="Cancel" /> ④
  </behavior>
  <text style="button-label button-label-delete">Delete Contact</text>
</view>
```

- ① Pressing "Delete" triggers an action to show the system dialog with the given title and message.
- ② The first pressable option in the system dialog
- ③ Pressing the first option will trigger contact deletion
- ④ The second pressable option has no behavior, so it only closes the dialog.

Unlike before, pressing the delete button will not have an immediate effect. Instead, the user will be presented with the dialog box and asked to confirm or cancel. Our core deletion behavior didn't change, we just chained it from another behavior.

[screenshot hyperview delete cropped] | *screenshot\_hyperview\_delete\_cropped.png*

Figure 18. Delete Contact confirmation

## 13.5. Adding a New Contact

Adding a new contact is the last feature we want to support in our mobile app. And luckily, it's also the easiest. We can reuse the concepts (and even some templates) from features we've already implemented. In particular, adding a new contact is very similar to editing an existing contact. Both features need to:

- Show a form to collect information about the contact
- Have a way to save the entered information
- Show validation errors on the form
- Persist the contact when there are no validation errors

Since the functionality is so similar, I'm going to summarize the changes here without showing the code. Hopefully, you can follow along:

1. Update `index.xml`.
  - Override the `header` block to add a new "Add" button.
  - Include a behavior in the button. When pressed, push a new screen as a modal by using `action="new"`, and request the screen content from `/contacts/new`.
2. Create a template `hv/new.xml`.
  - Override the header block to include a button that closes the modal, using `action="close"`.
  - Include the `hv/form_fields.xml` template to render empty form fields
  - Add a "Add Contact" button below the form fields.
  - Include a behavior in the button. When pressed, make a `POST` request to `/contacts/new`, and use `action="replace-inner"` to update the form fields.
3. Update the Flask view.
  - Change `contacts_new_get()` to use `render_to_response()` with the `hv/new.xml` template.
  - Change `contacts_new()` to use `render_to_response()` with the `hv/form_fields.xml` template. Pass `saved=True` when rendering the template after successfully persisting the new contact.

By reusing `form_fields.xml` for both editing and adding a contact, we get to reuse some code and ensure the two features have a consistent UI. Also, our "Add Contact" screen will benefit from the "saved" logic that's already a part of `form_fields.xml`. After successfully adding a new contact, the screen will dispatch the `contact-updated` event, which will refresh the contacts list and show the newly added contact. The screen will reload itself to show the Contact Details.

[screenshot hyperview add] | *screenshot\_hyperview\_add.png*

Figure 19. Add Contact modal

## 13.6. Deploying the App

With the completion of the contact creation UI, we have a fully implemented mobile app! It supports searching a list of contacts, viewing the details of a contact, editing & deleting a contact, and adding a new contact. But so far, we've been developing the app using a simulator on our desktop computer. How can we see it running on a mobile device? And how can we get it into the hands of our users?

To see the app running on a physical device, let's take advantage of the Expo platform's app preview functionality.

1. Download the Expo Go app on an Android or iOS device.
2. Restart the Flask app, binding to an interface accessible on your network. This might look something like `flask run --host 192.168.7.229`, where the host is your computer's IP address on the network.
3. Update the Hyperview client code so that `ENTRY_POINT_URL` (in `demo/src/constants.js`) points to the IP and port that the Flask server is bound to.

4. After running `yarn start` in the Hyperview demo app, you will see a QR code printed in the console, with instructions on how to scan it on Android and iOS.

Once you scan the QR code, the full app will run on the device! As you interact with the app, you will see HTTP requests made to the Flask server. You can even use the physical device during development. Any time you make a change in the HXML, just reload the screen to see the UI updates.

So we have the app running on a physical device, but it's still not production ready. To get the app into the hands of our users, there's a few things we need to do:

1. Deploy our backend in production. We need to use a production-grade web server like Gunicorn instead of the Flask development server. And we should run our app on a machine reachable on the Internet, most likely using a cloud provider like AWS or Heroku.
2. Create standalone binary apps. By following the instructions from the Expo project, we can create a `.ipa` or `.apk` file, for the iOS and Android platforms. Remember to update `ENTRY_POINT_URL` in the Hyperview client to point to the production backend.
3. Submit our binaries to the iOS App Store or Google Play Store, and wait for app approval.

Once the app is approved, congratulations! Our mobile app can be downloaded by Android and iOS users. And here's the best part. Because our app uses the hypermedia architecture, we can add features to our app by simply updating the backend. The UI and interactions are completely specified with the HXML generated from server-side templates. Want to add a new section to a screen? Just update an existing HXML template. Want to add a new type of screen to the app? Create a new route, view, and HXML template. Then, add a behavior to an existing screen that will open the new screen. To push these changes to your users, you just need to re-deploy the backend. Our app knows how to interpret HXML, and that's enough for it to understand how to handle the new features.

## 13.7. One Backend, Multiple Hypermedia formats

To create a mobile app using the hypermedia architecture, we started with the web-based contacts app and made a few changes, primarily replacing HTML templates with HXML templates. But in the process of porting the backend to serve our mobile app, we lost the web application functionality. Indeed, if you tried to visit `http://0.0.0.0:5000` in a web browser, you would see a jumble of text and XML markup. That's because web browsers don't know how to render plain XML, and they certainly don't know how to interpret the tags and attributes of HXML to render an app. It's a shame, because the Flask code for the web application and mobile app are nearly identical. The database and model logic are shared, and most of the views are unchanged as well.

At this point you're surely wondering: is it possible to use the same backend to serve both a web application and mobile app? The answer is yes! In fact, this is one of the benefits of using a hypermedia architecture across multiple platforms. We don't need to port any client-side logic from one platform to another, we just need to respond to requests with the appropriate Hypermedia format. To do this, we will utilize content negotiation built into HTTP.

## What is Content Negotiation?

Imagine a German speaker and Japanese speaker both visit <https://google.com> in their web browser. They will see the Google home page localized in German and Japanese, respectively. How does Google know to return a different version of the homepage based on the user's preferred language? The answer lies in the REST architecture, and how it separates the concepts of resources and representations.

In the REST architecture, the Google homepage is considered to be a single "resource", represented by a unique URL. However, that single resource can have multiple "representations". Representations are variations on how the content of the resource is presented to the client. The German and Japanese versions of the Google homepage are two representations of the same resource. To determine the best representation of a resource to return, HTTP clients and servers engage in a process called "content negotiation". It works like this:

- Clients specify the preferred representation through **Accept-\*** request headers.
- The server tries to match the preferred representation as best it can, and communicates back the chosen representation using **Content-\***.

In the Google homepage example, the German speaker uses a browser that is set to prefer content localized for German. Every HTTP request made by the web browser will include a header **Accept-Language: de-DE**. The server sees the request header, and it will return a response localized for German (if it can). The HTTP response will include a **Content-Language: de-DE** header to inform the client of the language of the response content.

Language is just one factor for resource representation. More importantly for us, resources can be represented using different content types, such as HTML or HXML. Content negotiation over content type is done using the **Accept** request header and **Content-Type** response header. Web browsers set **text/html** as the preferred content type in the **Accept** header. The Hyperview client sets **application/vnd.hyperview+xml** as the preferred content type. This gives us our backend a way to distinguish requests coming from a web browser or Hyperview client, and serve the appropriate content to each. There are two main approaches: fine-grained and global.

### Approach 1: Template Switching

When we ported the Contacts app from the web to mobile, we kept all of the Flask views but made some minor changes. Specifically, we introduced a new function **render\_to\_response()** and called it in the return statement of each view. Here's the function again to refresh your memory:

**app.py**

```
def render_to_response(template_name, *args, **kwargs):
    content = render_template(template_name, *args, **kwargs)
    response = make_response(content)
    response.headers['Content-Type'] = 'application/vnd.hyperview+xml'
    return response
```

**render\_to\_response()** renders a template with the given context, and turns it into an Flask response object with the appropriate Hyperview **Content-Type** header. Obviously, the implementation is

highly-specific to serving our Hyperview mobile app. But we can modify the function to do content negotiation based on the requests's **Accept** header:

app.py

```
HTML_MIME = 'text/html'
HXML_MIME = 'application/vnd.hyperview+xml'

def render_to_response(html_template_name, hxml_template_name, *args, **kwargs): ①
    response_type = request.accept_mimetypes.best_match([HTML_MIME, HXML_MIME],
    default=HTML_MIME) ②
    template_name = hxml_template_name if response_type == HXML_MIME else
    html_template_name ③
    content = render_template(template_name, *args, **kwargs)
    response = make_response(content)
    response.headers['Content-Type'] = response_type ④
    return response
```

- ① Function signature takes two templates, one for HTML and one for HXML
- ② Determine whether the client wants HTML or HXML
- ③ Select the template based on the best match for the client
- ④ Set the **Content-Type** header based on the best match for the client

Flask's request object exposes an **accept\_mimetypes** property to help with content negotiation. We pass our two content MIME types to **request.accept\_mimetypes.best\_match()** and get back the MIME type that works for our client. Based on the best matching MIME type, we choose to either render an HTML template or HXML template. We also make sure to set the **Content-Type** header to the appropriate MIME type. The only difference in our Flask views is that we need to provide both an HTML and HXML template:

app.py

```
@app.route("/contacts/<contact_id>")
def contacts_view(contact_id=0):
    contact = Contact.find(contact_id)
    return render_to_response("show.html", "hv/show.xml", contact=contact) ①
```

- ① Template switching between an HTML and HXML template, based on the client.

After updating all of the Flask views to support both templates, our backend will support both web browsers and our mobile app! This technique works well for the Contacts app because the screens in the mobile app map directly to pages of the web application. Each app has a dedicated page (or screen) for listing contacts, showing and editing details, and creating a new contact. This meant the Flask views could be as-is without major changes. But what if we wanted to re-imagine the Contacts app UI for our mobile app? Perhaps we want the mobile app to use a single screen, with rows that expanded in-line to support viewing and editing the information? In situations where the UI diverges between platforms, Template Switching becomes cumbersome or impossible. We need a different approach to have one backend serve both hypermedia formats.

## Approach 2: The Redirect Fork

If you recall, the Contacts web app has an `index` view, routed from the root path `/`:

`app.py`

```
@app.route("/")
def index():
    return redirect("/contacts") ①
```

① Redirect requests from `/` to `/contacts`

When someone requests to the root path of the web application, Flask redirects them to the `/contacts` path. This redirect also works in our Hyperview mobile app. The Hyperview client's `ENTRY_POINT_URL` points to `http://0.0.0.0:5000/`, and the server redirects it to `http://0.0.0.0:5000/contacts`. But there's no law that says we need to redirect to the same path in our web application and mobile app. What if we used the `Accept` header to redirect to decide on the redirect path?

`app.py`

```
HTML_MIME = 'text/html'
HXML_MIME = 'application/vnd.hyperview+xml'

@app.route("/")
def index():
    response_type = request.accept_mimetypes.best_match([HTML_MIME, HXML_MIME],
default=HTML_MIME) ①
    if response_type == HXML_MIME:
        return redirect("/mobile/contacts") ②
    else:
        return redirect("/web/contacts") ③
```

① Determine whether the client wants HTML or HXML

② If the client wants HXML, redirect them to `/mobile/contacts`

③ If the client wants HTML, redirect them to `/web/contacts`

The endpoint is a fork in the road: if the client wants HTML, we redirect them to one path. If the client wants HXML, we redirect them to a different path. These redirects would be handled by different Flask views:

`app.py`

```
@app.route("/mobile/contacts")
def mobile_contacts():
    # Render an HXML response

@app.route("/web/contacts")
def web_contacts():
    # Render an HTML response
```



The `mobile_contacts()` view would render an HXML template with a list of contacts. Tapping a contact item would open a screen requested from `/mobile/contacts/1`, handled by a view `mobile_contacts_view`. After the initial fork, all subsequent requests from our mobile app go to paths prefixed with `/mobile/`, and get handled by mobile-specific Flask views. Likewise, all subsequent requests from the web app go to paths prefixed with `/web/`, and get handled by web-specific Flask views. (Note that in practice, we would want to separate the web and mobile views into separate parts of our codebase: `web_app.py` and `mobile_app.py`. We may also choose not to prefix the web paths with `/web/`, if we want more elegant URLs displayed in the browser's address bar.)

You may be thinking that the Redirect Fork leads to a lot of code duplication. After all, we need to write double the number of views: one set for the web application, and one set for the mobile app. That is true, which is why the Redirect Fork is only preferred if the two platforms require a disjoint set of view logic. If the apps are similar on both platforms, Template Switching will save a lot of time and keep the apps consistent. Even if we need to use the Redirect Fork, the bulk of the logic in our models can be shared by both sets of views. In practice, you may start out using Template Switching, but then realize you need to implement a fork for platform-specific features. In fact, we're already doing that in the Contacts app. When porting the app from web to mobile, we didn't bring over certain features like archiving functionality. The dynamic archive UI might be a power feature that wouldn't make sense on a mobile device. Since our HXML templates don't expose any entrypoints to the Archive functionality, we can treat it as "web-only" and not worry about supporting it in Hyperview.

## 13.8. Summary

- Creating a Hyperview-powered mobile app is as simple as cloning a Git repo and configuring a single entrypoint URL.
- Flask is perfectly suited for serving a Hyperview mobile app. The Jinja templating system can generate dynamic HXML based on the context from a view.
- Using elements like `<view>`, `<text>`, `<list>`, and `<item>`, we can create native-feeling screens in HXML.
- Using behaviors, we can implement interactions on the contacts list such as infinite scroll, search-as-you-type, and pull-to-refresh.
- Events are a client-side feature of Hyperview that allows triggering behaviors across screens. They are useful to keep state in sync throughout the app, such as after editing or deleting a contact.
- A Hyperview-powered mobile app can be bundled and released through the iOS and Android app stores. New screens and features can be added to the app just by updating the backend!
- The same Flask backend can support both web and mobile apps. Using HTTP content negotiation, a server can render either HTML or HXML responses from the same view. More complex apps may require the use of redirects and platform-specific views.



# Chapter 14. Extending the Hyperview Client

This chapter covers:

- Adding phone call and email integration with a custom behavior action
- Showing confirmation toast messages with a custom behavior action
- Supporting a "swipeable row" UI with a custom Hyperview component

In the previous chapter, we created a fully-featured native mobile version of our Contacts app. Aside from customizing the endpoint URL, we didn't need to touch any code that runs on the mobile device. We defined our mobile app's UI and logic completely in the backend code, using Flask and HXML templates. This is possible because the standard Hyperview client supports all of the basic features by mobile apps. But the standard Hyperview client can't do everything out of the box. App developers want their apps to have unique touches like custom UIs or deep integration with platform capabilities. To support these needs, the Hyperview client was designed to be extended with custom behavior actions and UI elements. In this section, we will enhance our mobile app with examples of both.

Before diving in, a quick introduction on the tech stack we'll be using. The Hyperview client is written in React Native. If you're not familiar with React Native, it is a popular cross-platform framework for creating mobile apps. It uses the same component-based API as React. This means developers familiar with JavaScript and React can quickly pick up React Native. React Native has a healthy ecosystem of open-source libraries. We'll be leveraging these libraries to create our custom extensions to the Hyperview client.

## 14.1. Adding Phone Calls and Email

Let's start with the most obvious feature missing from our Contacts app: phone calls. Mobile device can make phone calls. The contacts in our app have phone numbers. Shouldn't our app support calling those phone numbers? And while we're at it, our app should also support e-mailing the contacts.

On the web, calling phone numbers is supported with the `tel:` URI scheme, and e-mails are supported with the `mailto:` URI scheme:

*tel and mailto schemes in HTML*

```
<a href="tel:555-555-5555">Call</a> ①  
<a href="mailto:joe@example.com">Email</a> ②
```

① When clicked, prompt the user to call the given phone number

② When clicked, open an e-mail client with the given address populated in the `to:` field.

The Hyperview client doesn't support the `tel:` and `mailto:` URI schemes. But we can add these capabilities to the client with custom behavior actions. Remember that behaviors are interactions defined in HXML. Behaviors have triggers ("press", "refresh") and actions ("update", "share"). The values of "action" are not limited to the set that comes in the Hyperview library. So let's define two

new actions, "open-phone" and "open-email".

### Phone and Email actions

```
<view xmlns:comms="https://manning.com/hyperview/communications"> ①
  <text>
    <behavior action="open-phone" comms:phone-number="555-555-5555" /> ②
    Call
  </text>
  <text>
    <behavior action="open-email" comms:email-address="joe@example.com" /> ③
    Email
  </text>
</view>
```

- ① Define an alias for an XML namespace used by our new attributes
- ② When pressed, prompt the user to call the given phone number
- ③ When pressed, open an e-mail client with the given address populated in the **to:** field.

Notice I defined the actual phone number and email address using separate attributes. In HTML, the scheme and data are crammed into the **href** attribute. HXML's **<behavior>** elements give more options for representing the data. I chose to use attributes, but I could've represented the phone number or email using child elements. I'm also using a namespace to avoid potential future conflicts with other client extensions.

So far so good, but how does the Hyperview client know how to interpret **open-phone** and **open-email**, and how to reference the **phone-number** and **email-address** attributes? This is where we finally need to write some Javascript.

First, I'm going to add a 3rd-party library (**react-native-communications**) to our demo app. This library provides a simple API that interacts with OS-level functionality for calls and emails.

```
> cd hyperview/demo
> yarn add react-native-communications ①
> yarn start ②
```

- ① Add dependency on **react-native-communications**
- ② Re-start the mobile app

Next, we'll create a new file, **phone.js**, that will implement the code associated with the **open-phone** action:

```
import { phonecall } from 'react-native-communications'; ❶

const namespace = "https://manning.com/hyperview/communications";

export default {
  action: "open-phone", ❷
  callback: (behaviorElement) => { ❸
    const number = behaviorElement.getAttributeNS(namespace, "phone-number"); ❹
    if (number != null) {
      phonecall(number, false); ❺
    }
  },
};
```

- ❶ Import the function we need from the 3rd party library.
- ❷ The name of the action
- ❸ The callback that runs when the action triggers.
- ❹ Get the phone number from the `<behavior>` element.
- ❺ Pass the phone number to the function from the 3rd party library.

Custom actions are defined as a JavaScript objects with two keys: `action` and `callback`. This is how the Hyperview client associates a custom action in the HXML with our custom code. The callback value is a function that takes a single parameter, `behaviorElement`. This parameter is an XML DOM representation of the `<behavior>` element that triggered the action. That means we can call methods on it like `getAttribute`, or access attributes like `childNodes`. In this case, we use `getAttributeNS` to read the phone number from the `phone-number` attribute on the `<behavior>` element. If the phone number is defined on the element, we can call the `phonecall()` function provided by the `react-native-communications` library.

There's one more thing we need to before we can use our custom action: register the action with the Hyperview client. The Hyperview client is represented as a React Native component called `Hyperview`. This component takes a prop called `behaviors`, which is an array of custom action objects like our "open-phone" action. Let's pass our "open-phone" implementation to the `Hyperview` component in our demo app.

```
import React, { PureComponent } from 'react';
import Hyperview from 'hyperview';
import OpenPhone from './phone'; ❶

export default class HyperviewScreen extends PureComponent {
  // ... omitted for brevity

  behaviors = [OpenPhone]; ❷

  render() {
    return (
      <Hyperview
        behaviors={this.behaviors} ❸
        entrypointUrl={this.entrypointUrl}
        // more props...
      />
    );
  }
}
```

❶ Import the open-phone action

❷ Create an array of custom actions

❸ Pass the custom actions to the **Hyperview** component, as a prop called **behaviors**.

Under the hood, the **Hyperview** component is responsible for taking HXML and turning it into mobile UI elements. It also handles triggering behavior actions based on user interactions. By passing the "open-phone" action to Hyperview, we can now use it as a value for the **action** attribute on **<behavior>** elements. In fact, let's switch do that now by updating the **show.xml** template in our Flask app:

```
{% block content %}
<view style="details">
  <text style="contact-name">{{ contact.first }} {{ contact.last }}</text>

  <view style="contact-section">
    <behavior ❶>
      xmlns:comms="https://manning.com/hyperview/communications"
      trigger="press"
      action="open-phone" ❷
      comms:phone-number="{{contact.phone}}" ❸
    </>
    <text style="contact-section-label">Phone</text>
    <text style="contact-section-info">{{contact.phone}}</text>
  </view>

  <view style="contact-section">
    <behavior ❹>
      xmlns:comms="https://manning.com/hyperview/communications"
      trigger="press"
      action="open-email"
      comms:email-address="{{contact.email}}"
    </>
    <text style="contact-section-label">Email</text>
    <text style="contact-section-info">{{contact.email}}</text>
  </view>
</view>
{% endblock %}
```

- ❶ Add a behavior to the phone number section that triggers on "press".
- ❷ Trigger the new "open-phone" action.
- ❸ Set the attribute expected by the "open-phone" action.
- ❹ Same idea, with a different action ("open-email")

I skipped over the implementation of the second custom action, "open-email". As you can guess, this action will open a system-level email composer to let the user send an email to their contact. The implementation of "open-email" is almost identical to "open-phone". The `react-native-communications` library exposes a function called `email()`, so we just wrap it and pass arguments to it in the same way.

There we have a complete example of extending the client with some custom behavior actions! We chose a new name for our actions ("open-phone" and "open-email"), and mapped those names to functions. The functions take `<behavior>` elements and can run any arbitrary React Native code. We wrapped an existing 3rd party library, and read attributes set on the `<behavior>` element to pass data to the library. After re-starting our demo app, our client has new capabilities we can immediately utilize by referencing the actions from our HXML templates.

## 14.2. Adding Toast Messages

The phone and email actions added in the previous section are examples of "system actions". System actions trigger some UI or capability provided by the device's OS. But custom actions are not limited to only interacting with OS-level APIs. Remember, the callbacks that implement actions can run arbitrary code, including code that renders our own UI elements. This next custom action example will do just that: render a custom confirmation toast UI element.

If you recall, our Contacts web app shows messages upon successful actions, such as deleting or creating a contact. These messages are generated in the Flask backend using the `flash()` function, called from the views. Then the base `layout.html` template rendered the messages into the final web page.

*Snippet templates/layout.html*

```
{% for message in get_flashed_messages() %}
  <div class="flash">{{ message }}</div>
{% endfor %}
```

Our Flask app still includes the calls to `flash()`, but the Hyperview app is not accessing the flashed message to display to the user. Let's add that support now. We could just show the messages using a similar technique to the web app: loop through the messages and render some `<text>` elements in `layout.xml`. This approach has a major downside: the rendered messages would be tied to a specific screen. If that screen get hidden by a navigation action, the message would be hidden too. What we really want is for our toast UI to display "above" all of the screens in the navigation stack. That way, the toast would remain visible (fading away after a few seconds), even if the stack of screens changes below. To display some UI outside of the `<screen>` elements, we're going to need to extend the Hyperview client with a new custom action, `show-toast`. This is another opportunity to use an open-source library, `react-native-root-toast`. Let's add this library to our demo app.

```
> cd hyperview/demo
> yarn add react-native-root-toast ①
> yarn start ②
```

① Add dependency on `react-native-root-toast`

② Re-start the mobile app

Now, we can write the code to implement the toast UI as a custom action.

```
import Toast from 'react-native-root-toast'; ❶

const namespace = "https://manning.com/hyperview/toast";

export default {
  action: "show-toast", ❷
  callback: (behaviorElement) => { ❸
    const message = behaviorElement.getAttributeNS(namespace, "message");
    if (message != null) {
      Toast.show(message, {position: Toast.positions.TOP, duration: 2000}); ❹
    }
  },
};
```

- ❶ Import the **Toast** API.
- ❷ The name of the action
- ❸ The callback that runs when the action triggers
- ❹ Pass the message to the toast library

This code looks very similar to the implementation of **open-phone**. Both callbacks follow a similar pattern: read namespaced attributes from the **<behavior>** element, and pass those values to a 3rd party library. For simplicity, I'm hard-coding options to show the toast at the top of the screen, fading out after 2 seconds. But **react-native-root-toast** exposes many options for positioning, timing of animations, colors, and more. We could specify these options using extra attributes on **behaviorElement** to make the action more configurable. For our purposes, we will just stick to a bare-bones implementation.

Now we just need to register our custom action with the **<Hyperview>** component, by passing it to the **behaviors** prop.

```
import React, { PureComponent } from 'react';
import Hyperview from 'hyperview';
import OpenEmail from './email';
import OpenPhone from './phone';
import ShowToast from './toast'; ❶

export default class HyperviewScreen extends PureComponent {
  // ... omitted for brevity

  behaviors = [OpenEmail, OpenPhone, ShowToast]; ❷

  // ... omitted for brevity
}
```

- ❶ Import the show-toast action

② Pass the action to the `Hyperview` component, as a prop called `behaviors`.

All that's left to do is trigger the `show-toast` action from our HXML. There are 3 user actions that result in showing a toast message:

1. Creating a new contact
2. Updating an existing contact
3. Deleting a contact

The first two actions are implemented in our app using the same HXML template, `form_fields.xml`. Upon successfully creating or updating a contact, this template will reload the screen and trigger an event, using behaviors that trigger on "load". The deletion action also uses behaviors that trigger on "load", defined in the `deleted.xml` template. So both `form_fields.xml` and `deleted.xml` need to be modified to also show toasts on load. Since the actual behaviors will be the same in both templates, let's create a shared template to reuse the HXML.

*hv/templates/toasts.xml*

```
{% for message in get_flashed_messages() %}
  <behavior ①
    xmlns:toast="https://manning.com/hyperview/toast"
    trigger="load" ②
    action="show-toast" ③
    toast:message="{{ message }}" ④
  />
{% endfor %}
```

- ① Define a behavior for each message to display
- ② Trigger this behavior as soon as the screen loads
- ③ Trigger the new "show-toast" action.
- ④ The "show-toast" action will display the flashed message in its UI.

Like in `layout.html` of the web app, we loop through all of the flashed messages and render some markup for each message. However, in the web app, the message was directly rendered into the web page. In the Hyperview app, each message is displayed using a behavior that triggers our custom UI. Now we just need to include this template in `form_fields.xml`:



```
<view xmlns="https://hyperview.org/hyperview" style="edit-group">
  {% if saved %}
    {% include "hv/toasts.xml" %} ❶
    <behavior trigger="load" once="true" action="dispatch-event" event-name="contact-
updated" />
    <behavior trigger="load" once="true" action="reload"
href="/contacts/{{contact.id}}" />
    {% endif %}
    <!-- omitted for brevity -->
</view>
```

❶ Show the toasts as soon as the screen loads.

And we can do the same thing in `deleted.xml`:

`hv/templates/deleted.xml`

```
<view xmlns="https://hyperview.org/hyperview">
  {% include "hv/toasts.xml" %} ❶
  <behavior trigger="load" action="dispatch-event" event-name="contact-updated" />
  <behavior trigger="load" action="back" />
</view>
```

❶ Show the toasts as soon as the screen loads.

In both `form_fields.xml` and `deleted.xml`, multiple behaviors get triggered on "load". In `deleted.xml`, we immediately navigate back to the previous screen. In `form_fields.xml`, we immediately reload the current screen to show the Contact details. If we rendered our toast UI elements directly in the screen, the user would barely see them before the screen disappeared or reloaded. By using a custom action, the toast UI remains visible even while the screens change beneath them.

[screenshot hyperview toast] | *screenshot\_hyperview\_toast.png*

*Figure 20. Toast shown during back navigation*

## 14.3. Swipe gesture on Contacts

To add communication capabilities and the toast UI, we extended the client with custom behavior actions. But the Hyperview client can also be extended with custom UI components that render on the screen. Custom components are implemented as React Native components. That means anything that's possible in React Native can be done in Hyperview as well! Custom components open up endless possibilities to build rich mobile apps with the Hypermedia architecture.

To illustrate the possibilities, we will extend the Hyperview client in our mobile app to add a "swipeable row" component. How does it work? The "swipeable row" component supports a horizontal swiping gesture. As the user swipes this component from right to left, the component will slide over, revealing a series of action buttons. Each action buttons will be able to trigger standard Hyperview behaviors when pressed. We will use this custom component in our Contacts

List screen. Each contact item will be a "swipeable row", and the actions will give quick access to edit and delete actions for the contact.

[screenshot hyperview swipe] | *screenshot\_hyperview\_swipe.png*

Figure 21. Swipeable contact item

## Designing The Component

Rather than implementing the swipe gesture from scratch, we will once again use an open-source third-party library: `react-native-swipeable`.

```
> cd hyperview/demo
> yarn add react-native-swipeable ①
> yarn start ②
```

① Add dependency on `react-native-swipeable`

② Re-start the mobile app

This library provides a React Native component called `Swipeable`. It can render any React Native components as its main content (the part that can be swiped). It also takes an array of React Native components as a prop to render as the action buttons. When designing a custom component, I like to iterate on the HXML of the component before writing the code. This way, I can make sure the markup is expressive but succinct, and will work with the underlying library. For the swipeable row, we need a way to represent the entire component, the main content, and one of many buttons. I came up with something that looks like this:

```
<swipe:row xmlns:swipe="https://manning.com/hyperview/swipeable"> ①
  <swipe:main> ②
    <!-- main content shown here -->
  </swipe:main>

  <swipe:button> ③
    <!-- first button that appears when swiping -->
  </swipe:button>

  <swipe:button> ④
    <!-- second button that appears when swiping -->
  </swipe:button>
</swipe:row>
```

① Parent element encapsulating the entire swipeable row, with custom namespace

② The main content of the swipeable row, can hold any HXML

③ The first button that appears when swiping, can hold any HXML

④ The second button that appears when swiping, can hold any HXML

This structure clearly separates the main content from the buttons. It also supports one, two, or more buttons. Buttons appear in the order of definition, making it easy to swap the order. This

design covers everything we need to implement a swipeable row for our contacts list. But it's also generic enough to be reusable. The markup above contains nothing specific to the contact name, editing the contact, or deleting the contact. If down the line, we add another list screen to our app, we can use this component to make the items in that list swipeable.

## Implementing The Component

Now that we know the HXML structure of our custom component, we can write the code to implement it. What does that code look like? Hyperview components are written as React Native components. These React Native components are mapped to a unique XML namespace & tag name. When the Hyperview client encounters that namespace & tag name in the HXML, it delegates rendering of the HXML element to the matching React Native component. As part of delegation, the Hyperview Client passes several props to the React Native component:

- **element**: The XML DOM element that maps to the React Native component
- **stylesheets**: The styles defined in the `<screen>`
- **onUpdate**: The function to call when the component triggers a behavior
- **option**: Miscellaneous settings used by the Hyperview client.

Our swipeable row component is a container with slots to render arbitrary main content and buttons. That means it needs to delegate rendering back to the Hyperview client to render those parts of the UI. This is done with a public function exposed by the Hyperview client, `Hyperview.renderChildren().renderChildren()`

Now that we know how custom Hyperview components are implemented, let's write the code for our swipeable row.

```

import React, { PureComponent } from 'react';
import Hyperview from 'hyperview';
import Swipeable from 'react-native-swipeable';

const NAMESPACE_URI = 'https://manning.com/hyperview/swipeable';

export default class SwipeableRow extends PureComponent { ❶
  static namespaceURI = NAMESPACE_URI; ❷
  static localName = "row"; ❸

  getElements = (tagName) => {
    return Array.from(this.props.element.getElementsByTagNameNS(NAMESPACE_URI,
    tagName));
  };

  getButtons = () => { ❹
    return this.getElements("button").map((buttonElement) => {
      return Hyperview.renderChildren(buttonElement, this.props.stylesheets,
      this.props.onUpdate, this.props.options); ❺
    });
  };

  render() {
    const [main] = this.getElements("main");
    if (!main) {
      return null;
    }

    return (
      <Swipeable rightButtons={this.getButtons()}> ❻
        {Hyperview.renderChildren(main, this.props.stylesheets, this.props.onUpdate,
        this.props.options)} ❼
      </Swipeable>
    );
  }
}

```

- ❶ Class-based React Native component
- ❷ Map this component to the given HXML namespace
- ❸ Map this component to the given HXML tag name
- ❹ Function that returns an array of React Native components for each `<button>` element.
- ❺ Delegate to the Hyperview client to render each button
- ❻ Pass the buttons and main content to the third-party library
- ❼ Delegate to the Hyperview client to render the main content

The `SwipeableRow` class implements a React Native component. At the top of the class, we set a static

`namespaceURI` property and `localName` property. These properties map the React Native component to a unique namespace & tag name pair in the HXML. This is how the Hyperview client knows to delegate to `SwipeableRow` when encountering custom elements in the HXML. At the bottom of the class, you'll see a `render()` method. `render()` gets called by React Native to return the rendered component. Since React Native is built on principle of composition, `render()` typically returns a composition of other React Native components. In this case, we return the `Swipeable` component (provided by the `react-native-swipeable` library), composed with React Native components for the buttons and main content. The React Native components for the buttons and main content are created using a similar process:

- Find the specific child elements (`<button>` or `<main>`)
- Turn those elements into React Native components using `Hyperview.renderChildren()`
- Set the components as children or props of `Swipeable`.

[figure hyperview components] | *figure\_hyperview\_components.png*

*Figure 22. Component rendering delegation*

I realize this code may be hard to follow if you've never worked with React or React Native. That's ok. The important takeaway is: we can write code to translate arbitrary HXML into React Native components. The structure of the HXML (both attributes and elements) can be used to represent multiple facets of the UI (in this case, the buttons and main content). Finally, the code can delegate rendering of child components back to the Hyperview client. That means this swipeable row component is completely generic. The actual structure and styling and interactions of the main content and buttons can be defined in the HXML. Creating a generic component means we can reuse it across multiple screens for different purposes. If we add more custom components or new behavior actions in the future, they will work with our swipeable row implementation.

The last thing to do is register this new component with the Hyperview client. The process is similar to registering custom actions. Custom components are passed as a separate `components` prop to the `Hyperview` component.

```
import React, { PureComponent } from 'react';
import Hyperview from 'hyperview';
import OpenEmail from './email';
import OpenPhone from './phone';
import ShowToast from './toast';
import SwipeableRow from './swipeable'; ❶

export default class HyperviewScreen extends PureComponent {
  // ... omitted for brevity

  behaviors = [OpenEmail, OpenPhone, ShowToast];
  components = [SwipeableRow]; ❷

  render() {
    return (
      <Hyperview
        behaviors={this.behaviors}
        components={this.components} ❸
        entrypointUrl={this.entrypointUrl}
        // more props...
      />
    );
  }
}
```

- ❶ Import the **SwipeableRow** component
- ❷ Create an array of custom components
- ❸ Pass the custom component to the **Hyperview** component, as a prop called **components**.

We're now ready to update our HXML templates to make use of the new swipeable row component!

## Using The Component

Currently, the HXML for a contact item in the list consists of a **<behavior>** and **<text>** element:

Snippet of **hv/rows.xml**

```
<item key="{{ contact.id }}" style="contact-item">
  <behavior trigger="press" action="push" href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}" /> ❶
  <text style="contact-item-label">
    <!-- omitted for brevity -->
  </text>
</item>
```

With our swipeable row component, this markup will become the "main" UI. So let's start by adding **<row>** and **<main>** as parent elements.

```

<item key="{{ contact.id }}">
  <swipe:row xmlns:swipe="https://manning.com/hyperview/swipeable"> ①
    <swipe:main> ②
      <view style="contact-item"> ③
        <behavior trigger="press" action="push" href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}" />
        <text style="contact-item-label">
          <!-- omitted for brevity -->
        </text>
      </view>
    </swipe:main>
  </swipe:row>
</item>

```

① Added `<swipe:row>` parent element, with namespace alias for `swipe`.

② Added `<swipe:main>` element to define the main content

③ Wrapped the existing `<behavior>` and `<text>` elements in a `<view>`

Previously, the `contact-item` style was set on the `<item>` element. That made sense when the `<item>` element was the container for the main content of the list item. Now that the main content is a child of `<swipe:main>`, we need to introduce a new `<view>` where we apply the styles.

If we reload our backend and mobile app, you won't experience any changes on the Contacts List screen yet. Without any action buttons defined, there's nothing to reveal when swiping a row. Let's add two buttons to the swipeable row.

```

<item key="{{ contact.id }}">
  <swipe:row xmlns:swipe="https://manning.com/hyperview/swipeable"> ①
    <swipe:main>
      <!-- omitted for brevity -->
    </swipe:main>

    <swipe:button> ①
      <view style="swipe-button">
        <text style="button-label">Edit</text>
      </view>
    </swipe:button>

    <swipe:button> ②
      <view style="swipe-button">
        <text style="button-label-delete">Delete</text>
      </view>
    </swipe:button>
  </swipe:row>
</item>

```

- ① Added `<swipe:button>` for edit action
- ② Added `<swipe:button>` for delete action

Now if we use our mobile app, we can see the swipeable row in action! As you swipe the contact item, the "Edit" and "Delete" buttons reveal themselves. But they don't do anything yet. We need to add some behaviors to these buttons. The "Edit" button is straight-forward: pressing it should open the contact details screen in edit mode.

Snippet of `hv/rows.xml`

```
<swipe:button>
  <view style="swipe-button">
    <behavior trigger="press" action="push" href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/edit" />
    ①
    <text style="button-label">Edit</text>
  </view>
</swipe:button>
```

- ① When pressed, push a new screen with the Edit Contact UI.

The "Delete" button is a bit more complicated. There's no screen to open for deletion, so what should happen when the user presses this button? Perhaps we use the same interaction as the "Delete" button on the Edit Contact screen. That interaction brings up a system dialog, asking the user to confirm the deletion. If the user confirms, the Hyperview client makes a **POST** request to `/contacts/<contact_id>/delete`, and appends the response to the screen. The response triggers a few behaviors immediately to reload the contacts list and show a toast message. This interaction will work for our action button as well:



```

<swipe:button>
  <view style="swipe-button">
    <behavior ①>
      xmlns:alert="https://hyperview.org/hyperview-alert"
      trigger="press"
      action="alert"
      alert:title="Confirm delete"
      alert:message="Are you sure you want to delete {{ contact.first }}"
    >
      <alert:option alert:label="Confirm">
        <behavior ②>
          trigger="press"
          action="append"
          target="item-{{ contact.id }}"
          href="/contacts/{{ contact.id }}/delete"
          verb="post"
        />
      </alert:option>
      <alert:option alert:label="Cancel" />
    </behavior>
    <text style="button-label-delete">Delete</text>
  </view>
</swipe:button>

```

- ① When pressed, open a system dialog box asking the user to confirm the action
- ② If confirmed, make a POST request to the deletion endpoint, and append the response to the parent `<item>`.

Now when we press "Delete", we get the confirmation dialog as expected. After pressing confirm, the backend response triggers behaviors that show a confirmation toast and reload the list of contacts. The item for the deleted contact disappears from the list.

[screenshot hyperview swipe delete] | *screenshot\_hyperview\_swipe\_delete.png*

Figure 23. Delete from swipe button

Notice that the action buttons are able to support any type of behavior action, from `push` to `alert`. If we wanted to, we could have the action buttons trigger our custom actions, like `open-phone` and `open-email`. Custom components and actions can be mixed freely with the standard components and actions that come standard with the Hyperview framework. This makes the extensions to the Hyperview client feel like first-class features.

In fact, I'll let you in on a secret. Within the Hyperview client, standard components and actions are implemented the same way as custom components and actions! The rendering code does not treat `<view>` differently from `<swipe:row>`. The behavior code does not treat `alert` differently from `open-phone`. They are both implemented using the same techniques described in this section. Standard components and actions are just the ones that are universally needed by all mobile apps. But they are just the starting point. Most mobile apps will require some extensions to the Hyperview client

to deliver a great user experience. Extensions evolve the client from being a generic "Hyperview client", to being a purpose-built client for your app. And importantly, this evolution preserves the Hypermedia, server-driven architecture and all of its benefits.

## 14.4. Conclusion

- With custom components and behaviors, Hyperview apps can do anything a native app can do.
- Support for system actions (like SMS and email) can be added with a Hyperview behavior action.
- Support for high-level UIs (like confirmation toasts) can also be added with a Hyperview behavior action.
- Support for customized screen elements (like swipeable items in lists) can be added with Hyperview custom components.
- The standard behaviors and components that come with the Hyperview client are implemented the same way as custom behavior actions and components.
- By customizing the Hyperview client, developers can build a mobile app that suits their specific needs while retaining the benefits of a thin-client, hypermedia architecture.

# Conclusion

# Chapter 15. Conclusion

## Hypermedia Reconsidered

I hope that in this book we have managed to convince you that hypermedia, rather than being a "legacy" technology or a technology only appropriate for "documents" of links, text and pictures, is, in fact, a powerful technology for building *applications*. In the books have seen how to build sophisticated user interfaces for both the web, with htmx, and for a mobile application, using HyperView, using hypermedia as a core underlying application technology.

Focusing in on the web, in particular, many developers today view the links and forms of "plain" HTML as bygone tools from a less sophisticated age. And, in some ways, they are right: there were definite usability issues with the original web. However, as we discovered while building Contact.app, by simply addressing four core limitations of HTML:

- By making any element capable of issuing an HTTP request
- By making any event capable of triggering an HTTP event
- By making all the different types of HTTP actions available
- By aking it possible to target any element in the DOM for replacement

We were able to build user interfaces that many developers would assume require a significant amount of client-side JavaScript, but using only hypermedia concepts.

The Hypermedia Driven Application approach is not right for every application (after all, no approach is right for *every* application) but, for many applications, the increased flexibility and simplicity of hypermedia can be a huge benefit. And, even if your application wouldn't benefit from this approach, it is at least worthwhile to *understand* the approach, it's strengths and weaknesses, and how it differs from the approach you are taking. The original web grew faster than any distributed system in history, and it is worth understanding the underlying technologies that made that growth possible.

### 15.1. Pausing, And Reflecting

The JavaScript community and, by extension, the web development community is famously chaotic, with new frameworks and technologies emerging monthly, and sometimes even *weekly*. It can be exhausting to keep up with the latest and greatest technologies that are coming out, and, at the same time, terrifying that we *won't* keep up with them and be left behind in our career.

This is not a fear without foundation: there are many senior software engineers that have seen their career peter out because they picked a technology to specialize in that, fairly or not, did not thrive. The web development world tends to be young, with many companies favoring young developers over older developers who "haven't kept up."

We shouldn't sugar-coat these realities of our industry. On the other hand, we also shouldn't ignore the downside that these realities create. It creates a high-pressure environment where everyone is watching for "the new new" thing, that is, for the latest and greatest technology that is going to

change everything. It creates pressure to *claim* that your technology is going to change everything, if you are trying to get attention. It tends to favor *sophistication* over *simplicity*. People are scared to ask "Is this too complex?" because it sounds an awful lot like "I'm not smart enough to understand this."

The software industry has tended, especially in web development, to lean far more towards innovating, rather than understanding the technologies of the past and building on them or within them. We tend to look ahead for new, genius solutions, rather than looking backwards to older ideas. This is understandable: the technology world is necessarily a forward-looking industry.

On the other hand, there have been a lot of great ideas in the past, many of which have been discarded. We are old enough to have seen hypermedia come and go as the "new new" idea. It was a little shocking to us to see it discarded so cavalierly by the industry. Fortunately, the concepts are still sitting there, waiting to be discovered and reinvigorated by a new generation of web developers. The original, RESTful architecture of the web, when looked at with fresh eyes, can address many of the problems today's web developers are facing.

Perhaps, following Mark Twain's advice, it is time to pause and reflect. Perhaps, for a few quiet moments, we can put the endless swirl of the "new new" aside, look back on where the web came from, and learn.

Perhaps it's time to give hypermedia a chance.

I hope you will.